Table of Contents

Introduction 4

Instrument Cluster 14

Warning lights and chimes 14
Gauges 19
Message center 21

Entertainment Systems 29

AM/FM stereo 29
AM/FM stereo with CD 31
Auxiliary input jack 38
USB port 40
Satellite radio information 44
Navigation system 47
SYNC® 47

Climate Controls 48

Heater only 48
Manual heating and air conditioning 49

Lights 51

Headlamps 51
Turn signal control 55
Bulb replacement 57

Driver Controls 64

Windshield wiper/washer control 64
Steering wheel adjustment 65
Power windows 66
Mirrors 67
Speed control 70
Upfitter controls 72

Locks and Security 75

Keys 75
Locks 75
Anti-theft system 85

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Table of Contents

Seating and Safety Restraints	**89**
Seating	89
Safety restraints	97
Airbags	106
Child restraints	116
Tires, Wheels and Loading	**138**
Tire information	140
Tire inflation	142
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	158
Vehicle loading	165
Trailer towing	173
Trailer brake controller-integrated	178
Recreational towing	183
Driving	**184**
Starting	184
Brakes	189
Traction Control™	191
Traction Control™/AdvanceTrac®	192
AdvanceTrac®	192
Transmission operation	202
Reverse sensing system	208
Rear-view camera system	210
Roadside Emergencies	**214**
Getting roadside assistance	214
Hazard flasher control	215
Fuel pump shut-off switch	216
Fuses and relays	217
Changing tires	225
Wheel lug nut torque	234
Jump starting	235
Wrecker towing	239

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Table of Contents

Customer Assistance 241

Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) 249
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) 249

Cleaning 250

Underbody preservation 255

Maintenance and Specifications 257

Engine compartment 259
Engine oil 260
Battery 263
Engine coolant 266
Fuel information 273
Air filter(s) 291
Part numbers 295
Maintenance product specifications and capacities 296
Engine data 300

Accessories 304

Ford Extended Service Plan 306

Scheduled Maintenance 310

Normal scheduled maintenance and log 315

Index 330

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2011 Ford Motor Company

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Introduction

CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: www.ford.com
- In Canada: www.ford.ca
- In Australia: www.ford.com.au
- In Mexico: www.ford.com.mx

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This Owner's Guide describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this Owner's Guide when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off: In the event of an accident this feature will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. It can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To restart your vehicle, refer to *Fuel pump shut-off* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Protecting the environment

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.

CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Guide.

Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNING: Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Using your vehicle as an ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual, Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines* as well as pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/ and then by selecting "Contact Us" or by phone at 1–877–840–4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, overpressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel which could lead to fires.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer.

Using your vehicle as a stationary power source (PTO)

Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information and guidelines for operating a vehicle equipped with an aftermarket power take-off system.

DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your *SYNC®* supplement for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was travelling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Note: Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only) the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information") only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches your request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

Vehicle Modification Data Recording

Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine and/or transmission damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Some vehicles are equipped with Powertrain Control Systems that can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that, for example, increase horsepower and torque output; this information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. When a dealer or repair facility works on your vehicle, it may be necessary for them to access the information in the Powertrain Control System. This information will likely identify if any unauthorized modifications have been made to the system, which may be used to determine if the warranty has been violated and if repairs will be covered by warranty.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

CELL PHONE USE

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle.
We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

EXPORT UNIQUE (NON–UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Guide. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Guide is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

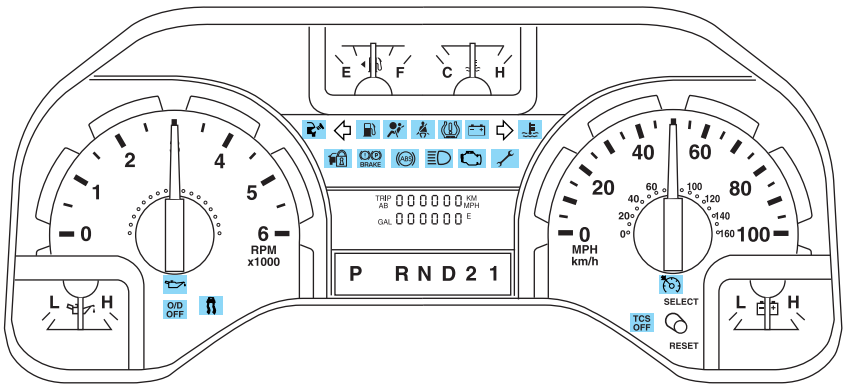
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Vehicle Symbol Glossary

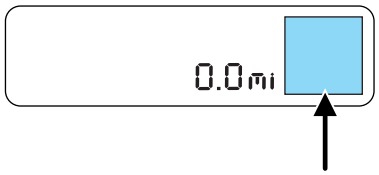
Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

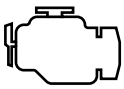
WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES



Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulb works. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.



Vehicles with optional message center: Warning lights called out as RTT are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights will illuminate in the optional message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights. If your vehicle is not equipped with a message center, the lights will appear on the cluster.



Service engine soon: The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the "Service engine soon" light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

WARNING: Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

Electronic throttle control (RTT): Displays when the engine has defaulted to a "limp-home" operation. Report the fault to a dealer at the earliest opportunity.

Check fuel cap (RTT): Displays when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service Engine Soon warning light to come on, refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specification* chapter.

Brake system warning light: To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Anti-lock brake system: If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.

Airbag readiness: If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned to on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.

Safety belt: Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.

Engine oil pressure (RTT): Displays when the oil pressure falls below the normal range, refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Engine coolant temperature (RTT): Displays when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Low tire pressure warning (if equipped): Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on or begins to flash, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Traction control / AdvanceTrac® (if equipped): Illuminates when the traction control system or the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. For further information, refer to *Traction control* or *AdvanceTrac® with roll stability control™ (RSC®) stability enhancement system* in the *Driving* chapter.

WARNING: If your vehicle is equipped with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, then it was designed to be operated with RSC®. Reduce speed and proceed to an authorized dealer to have the system serviced immediately.

Traction control off (if equipped): Illuminates when the traction control system has been disabled by the driver. For further information, refer to *Traction control* in the *Driving* chapter.

TCS
OFF

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Transmission Tow/Haul Feature (if equipped): Illuminates when the Tow/Haul feature has been activated. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation. If the light flashes steadily, have the system serviced immediately, damage to the transmission could occur.

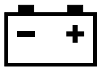
TOW
HAUL

Anti-theft system: Flashes when the SecuriLock® Passive Anti-theft System has been activated.

Overdrive off (if equipped): Illuminates when the overdrive function of the transmission has been turned off; refer to the *Driving* chapter. If the light does not illuminate, have the transmission serviced soon, or damage may occur.

O/D
OFF

Charging system (RTT): Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



Speed control: Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.

Low fuel (RTT): Displays when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).

Turn signal: Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

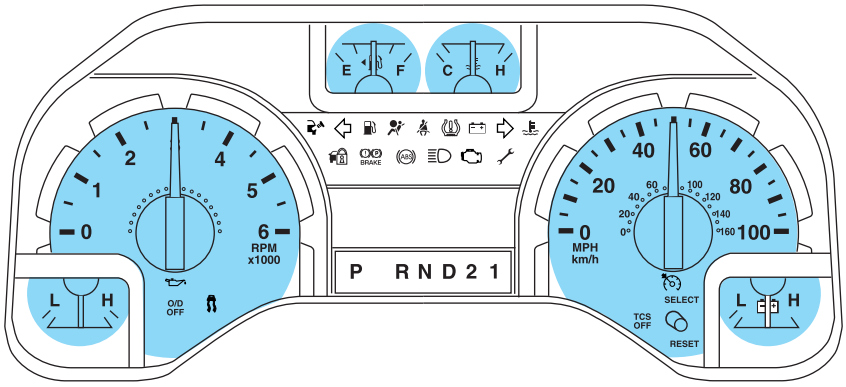
High beams: Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.

Key-in-ignition warning chime: Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

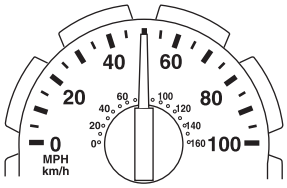
Headlamps on warning chime: Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

Parking brake on warning chime: Sounds when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h).

GAUGES

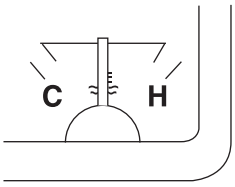


Speedometer: Indicates the current vehicle speed.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

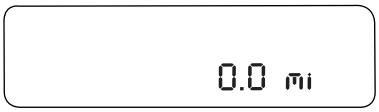
Engine coolant temperature gauge: Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between "H" and "C"). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**



WARNING: Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Odometer: Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle.

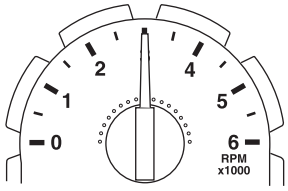
Refer to *Message center* in this chapter on how to switch the display from metric to English.



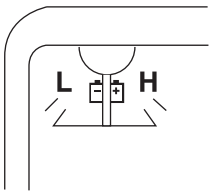
Trip odometer: Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys.

Refer to *Message center* in this chapter to learn how to use the trip odometer.

Tachometer: Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

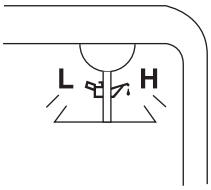


Battery voltage gauge: Indicates the battery voltage when the ignition is in the on position. If the pointer moves and stays outside the normal operating range, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

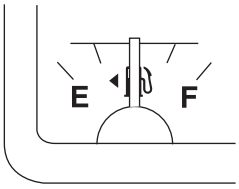


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Engine oil pressure gauge: Indicates engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range (between "L" and "H"). If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and check the engine oil level. Add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer.



Fuel gauge: Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.



The FUEL icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with an informational message followed by a long indicator chime.

The message center display is located in the instrument cluster.

Selectable features (information menu)

Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem, located in the speedometer, to scroll and reset the following functions. Select or reset the function by holding the SELECT/RESET stem for more than two seconds.

TRIP A/B

Registers the distance of individual journeys. To reset, press and hold for less than two seconds.

MILES (km) TO E

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The DTE function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km), to empty. Press the SELECT/RESET stem to clear this warning message. It will return at approximately 25 miles (40 km), 10 miles (16 km) and 0 miles (0 km) to empty.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is re-initialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

XX.X AVG MPG (L/100km)

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing distance traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the SELECT/RESET stem (press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

MPG (L/km)

This displays instantaneous fuel economy as a bar graph ranging from ↓ poor economy to ↑ excellent economy.

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows ↓, one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Setup menu (vehicle customization and vehicle system check)

HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to get into the setup menu sequence for the following displays:

Note: When returning to the setup menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to change back to English.

OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW

This displays the remaining oil life.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change, perform the following:

1. Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

Note: To change oil life 100% value to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the SELECT/RESET stem to change the oil life start value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

UNITS ENG / METRIC

Displays the current units English or Metric.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to change from English to Metric.

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

AUTOLOCK (if equipped)

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear and when the vehicle is in motion over 13 mph (20 km/h) or higher.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to turn this feature on or off.

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

AUTOUNLOCK (if equipped)

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to turn this feature on or off.

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

REAR PARK AID (if equipped)

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to turn this feature on or off. (You can also choose to turn this feature on/off when the vehicle is placed in reverse.)

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

COMPASS (if equipped)

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

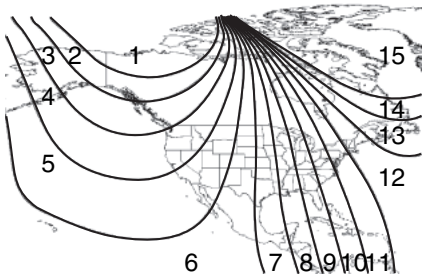
Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone adjustment.*

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is up to four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass calibration adjustment.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Compass zone adjustment

1. Determine which magnetic zone you are in for your geographic location by referring to the zone map.



2. Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem to scroll through the information displays until the message center displays HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU.

3. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to get into the setup menu. Repeatedly press it again to scroll through the setup menu until the message center displays COMPASS ZONE XX.

4. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for approximately two seconds to go to the next zone, then release.

5. Press and hold to go up by one zone then release. Repeat this until you reach the desired zone.

6. Release the SELECT/RESET stem and allow the setup timer to expire to exit the procedure.

Compass calibration adjustment

Note: For optimum calibration, drive to an open, level location away from large metallic objects or structures. Switch off all non-essential electrical accessories (heated rear window, heater, A/C, map lamps, wiper, etc.) and make sure all the doors are closed.

1. Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem to scroll through the information displays until the message center displays HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to get into the setup menu. Repeatedly press it again to scroll through the setup menu until the message center displays HOLD RESET FOR CALIBRATION.

3. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for approximately two seconds until the message center enters the compass zone adjustment mode.

4. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem until the message center displays CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE.

Note: This step may require up to five circles to complete the calibration.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Note: If the SELECT/RESET stem is pressed during the calibration or three minutes has elapsed since the beginning of the calibration without driving the vehicle, the message center reverts back to normal operation and the CAL will display until a successful calibration is carried out.

5. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle less than 3 mph (5 km/h) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE message changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED.

LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH

Allows you to choose which language the message center will display in. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

Waiting four seconds or pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

Press the RESET button to set the language choice when the language you want appears.

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to select system check when HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK is displayed in the message center. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an ok message or a warning message for two seconds. Pressing the SELECT/RESET stem cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

1. XXX% OIL LIFE (Gas engine only)

2. ENGINE HOURS

3. ENGINE IDLE HOURS

4. CHARGING SYSTEM

5. BRAKE SYSTEM

6. TBC GAIN = XX.X
NO TRAILER (if equipped and no trailer connected)

7. TBC GAIN = XX.X
OUTPUT = ////// (if equipped and trailer connected)

8. XX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL XXX

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

System warnings

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing the SELECT/RESET stem. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

If the message will not reset or clear when pressing the SELECT/RESET stem, you must address the problem in order to clear the message.

PARK BRAKE ENGAGED — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

SERVICE ADVANCETRAC — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

XXX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL LOW — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped) — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped) — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped) — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped) — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

CHECK REAR PARK AID (if equipped) — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse). Refer to *Reverse sensing system* in the *Driving* chapter.

LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped) — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped) — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped) — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible

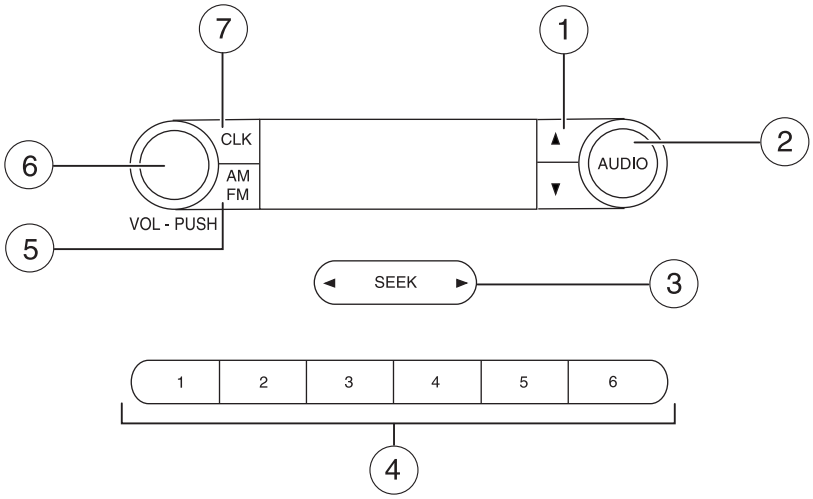
ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% or less. When oil life left is between 5% and 0%, the ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON message will be displayed.

OIL CHANGE REQUIRED — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%, the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message will be displayed. OIL LIFE OK displays after you have changed the oil.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

AUDIO SYSTEMS

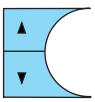
AM/FM stereo system (if equipped)



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Accessory delay: Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the radio and other electrical accessories for up to ten minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ : Press ▲ / ▼ to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.



Also use in AUDIO mode to gain access to various settings.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2. **AUDIO:** Press AUDIO repeatedly to gain access to the following settings:

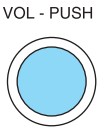
- **BAL (Balance):** Press AUDIO to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.
- **FAD (Fade)–If equipped with four speaker audio system:** Press AUDIO to reach the fade feature. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the front (F) and back (B) speakers.
- **TREB (Treble):** Press to adjust the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust.
- **BASS (Bass):** Press to adjust the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust.

3. **SEEK:** Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.

4. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. You can save up to 18 stations, six in AM, six in FM1 and FM2.

5. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM repeatedly to cycle through: AM > FM1 > FM2 > IN (auxiliary input jack). For more information on the auxiliary input jack, refer to *Line in, auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

6. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL-PUSH to turn ON/OFF. Turn VOL-PUSH to increase/decrease volume.



7. **CLK (Clock):** Press CLK to toggle between displaying the radio frequency and the clock setting.

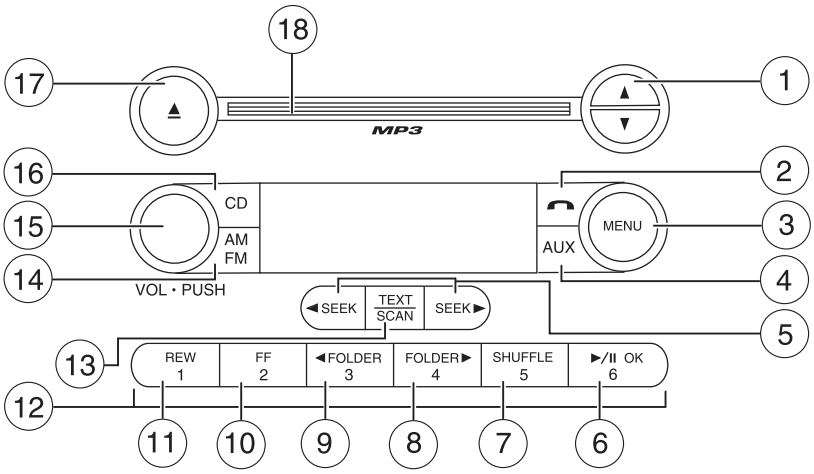
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Setting the clock: Press and hold CLK until the hours begin to flash. Press ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to manually increase/decrease the hours.

Press CLK again to set the minutes using ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to manually increase/decrease the minutes. Allow 10 seconds to pass to confirm that the time has been set.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Setting the clock* in your *Navigation supplement*.

AM/FM Single CD/MP3 satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Accessory delay: Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the radio and other electrical devices may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

1. ▲ / ▼ **(Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.
In CATEGORY MODE, press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.). Refer to *Category* under *Menu* for further information.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

2. **(Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.
If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, the display will read NO PHONE.

3. **MENU:** Press repeatedly to access the following settings:

Setting the clock: Press MENU until SET HOURS or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ /▼ to manually increase/decrease. Press MENU again to disengage clock mode.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Setting the clock* in your *Navigation supplement*.

SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped): Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ /▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 songs. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ /▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.
  Note: If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all song's from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.
  Note: If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

AUTOSET: Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ /▼ to turn on/off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

RBDS: Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.
To activate, press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ /▼ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type.

To search for specific RBDS music categories: When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ /▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◄ SEEK, SEEK ► or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

To view the station name or type: When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYZ, etc.).

BASS: Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ to adjust.

TREB (Treble): Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ to adjust.

BAL (Balance): Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ /▼ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

FADE (If equipped with four speaker audio system): Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ /▼ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

SPEED VOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped): Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ /▼ to adjust.

The default setting is *off;* increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust *1–7:* Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is *1–3;* SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

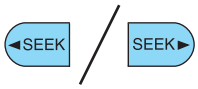
TRACK/FOLDER MODE: Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode.
In track mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through all tracks on the disc.
In folder mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through tracks within the selected folder.
Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).

COMPRESS (Compression): Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display. Use ▲ /▼ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode), SYNC®, SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).

For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

5. **SEEK: In radio mode,** press ◀ /▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



In CD mode, press ◀ /▶ to access the previous/next CD track.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.
In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.
In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

6. ▶/❙❙ **OK (Play/Pause):** This control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD/MP3. The CD/MP3 status will display in the radio display.

OK: Use in various menu selections.

7. **SHUFFLE:** Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.
To disengage, press SHUFFLE. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.

Note: In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

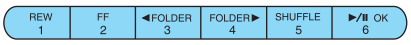
8. **FOLDER ▶** : In folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

9. ◀ **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.

11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.

12. **Memory presets:** To set a station, select the desired frequency band, AM, FM1 or FM2. Tune to the desired station. Press and hold a preset button until sound returns and PRESET # SAVED appears in the display. You can save up to 18 stations, six in AM, six in FM1 and FM2.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

In MP3 mode, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

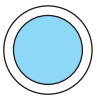
In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.

In TEXT MODE, sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the ">" indicator is active, press SEEK ▶ to view the additional display text. When the "<" indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.



Note: If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD/MP3 is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last. If no CD is loaded, NO DISC will appear in the display.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

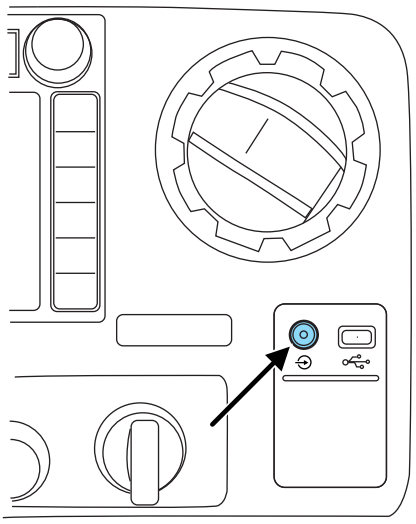
17. ⏏ **(CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.

18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up in the CD slot.

Auxiliary input jack

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with an Auxiliary Input Jack (AIJ). The Auxiliary Input Jack, located on the instrument panel near the radio, provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity. To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.
If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio features* chapter of your *Navigation system* supplement.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Required equipment:

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones

2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.

2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.

3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.

4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.

5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.

6. If you have a single CD system, press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display. If you have the AM/FM stereo system, press AM/FM repeatedly until IN appears in the display.
You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.

7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls (for the single CD system) or by switching back and forth between IN and FM (for the AM/FM stereo).

Troubleshooting:

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.

2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persist, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.

4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.

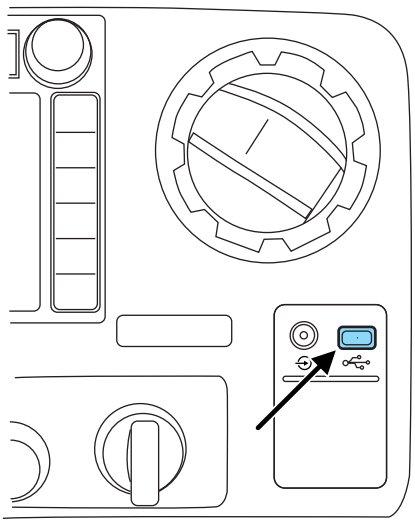
5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

USB port (if equipped)

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port located on the instrument panel. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the *SYNC®* supplement or *Navigation system* supplement.



GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

Radio frequencies:

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio reception factors:

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

CD/CD player care

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.

- Wipe discs from the center out.

Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

Audio system warranty and service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

MP3 track and folder structure

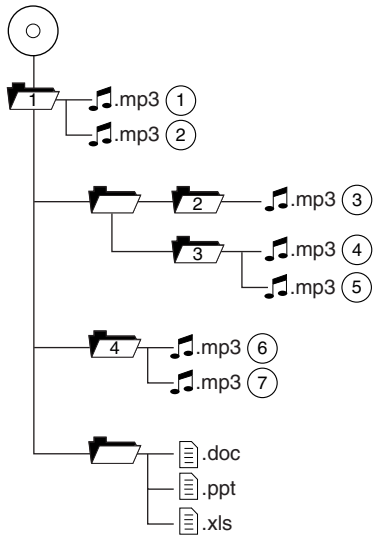
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.
  Note: The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.



In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

Satellite radio information (if equipped)

Satellite radio channels: SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit www.sirius.com in the United States, www.siriuscanada.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1–888–539–7474.

Satellite radio reception factors: To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- Antenna obstructions: For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

SIRIUS® satellite radio service: SIRIUS® satellite radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS® service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system include hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.

For information on extended subscription terms, the online media player and other SIRIUS® features, please contact SIRIUS® at 1–888–539–7474.

Note: SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

Satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN): This 12–digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS®. While in satellite radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing the AUX and preset 1 controls simultaneously.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS® at 1–888–539–7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS® satellite or SIRIUS® tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS® signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc.) The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS® 1–888–539–7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS® satellite radio.	Call SIRIUS® at 1–888–539–7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

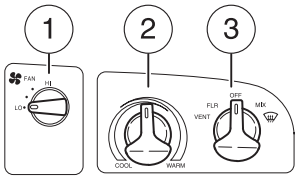
Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation System* supplement for further information.

SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC®, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

HEATER ONLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.

VENT: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

FLR: Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

OFF: Outside air is shut out and the climate system is turned off.

MIX: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and the floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents.

Operating tips

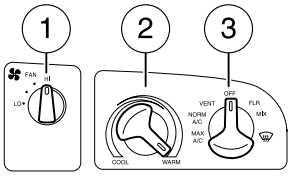
- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle during cold or warm weather, do not drive with the air flow selector in the OFF position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the air flow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select MIX.
2. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
3. Set the fan speed to HI.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. Also controls the airflow for the rear auxiliary system (if equipped). See the following for a brief description on each control.

MAX A/C: Uses recirculated air to cool the vehicle. Air flows from the instrument panel vents only. If equipped with auxiliary A/C, auxiliary airflow will be from the rear headliner vents.

NORM A/C: Uses outside air to cool the vehicle. Air flows from the instrument panel vents only. If equipped with auxiliary A/C, auxiliary airflow will be from the rear headliner vents.

VENT: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

OFF: Outside air is shut out and the climate system is turned off.

FLR: Distributes outside air through the floor vents. If equipped with rear auxiliary heater or A/C, auxiliary airflow will be from the rear floor vents.

MIX: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents. If equipped with rear auxiliary heater or A/C, auxiliary airflow will be from the rear floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents. If equipped with rear auxiliary heater or A/C, auxiliary airflow will be from the rear floor vents.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Operating tips

- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the air flow selector in the OFF position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

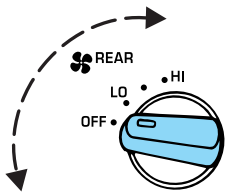
During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, turn off the rear A/C unit (if equipped), reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the PARK gear position to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select MIX.
2. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
3. Set the fan speed to HI.

REAR FAN SPEED ADJUSTMENT (IF EQUIPPED)

The rear fan controls adjust the volume of air circulated in the rear of the vehicle.



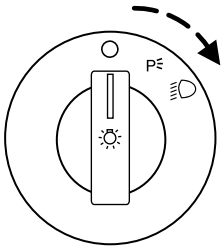
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

HEADLAMP CONTROL

Turns the lamps off.

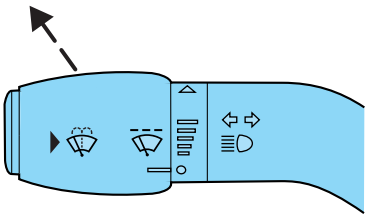
Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

Turns the headlamps on.



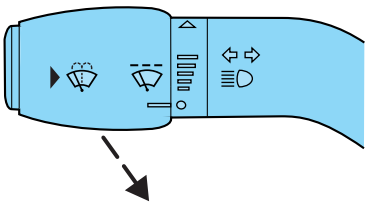
High beams

- Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate.
- Pull the lever toward you to deactivate.



Flash-to-pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

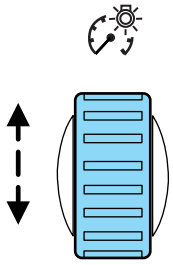
To activate:

- the ignition must be in the on position and
- the headlamp control is in the off or parking lamp position.

WARNING: Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable switches in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.



- Move the control up or down to adjust the intensity of the panel lighting.
- Move the control to the full upright position, past detent, to turn on the interior lamps.

Note: If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer switch requires re-calibration. Rotate the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full dome/on position to reset. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions.

The dome lamp will not illuminate if the control switch is not rotated past the detent.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

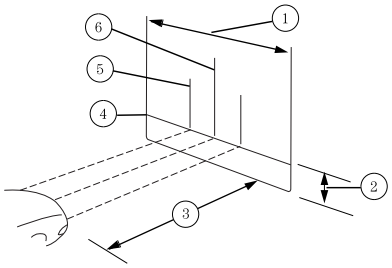
VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL AIM ADJUSTMENT (SEALED BEAM HEADLAMPS)

The headlamps on your vehicle are intended to be aimed using mechanical aimers. If mechanical aimers are used and the cross-car sight line is in any way blocked, set the legs of the universal adaptor all to the same setting, such that the cross-car sight line is no longer blocked, per the instructions for the brand of mechanical aimer used. You can also aim the headlamps visually using the procedure below.

To adjust the headlamps:

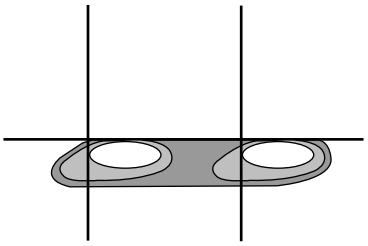
1. Park your vehicle on a level surface about 25 feet (7.6 meters) away from a vertical plain surface (3). Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.

- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line
- (5) Center of headlamps
- (6) Center line of the vehicle



2. The center of the headlamp is marked either on the lens (a circle or cross marker) or on the bulb shield, internal to the lamp (mark or feature). Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground (2) and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) long horizontal line on the wall or screen (1) at this height (masking tape works well).

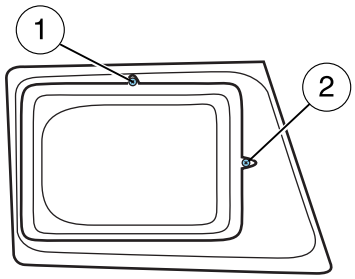
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.



4. Locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern and place the top edge of the intensity zone even with the horizontal reference line (4). If the top edge of the high intensity area is not even with the horizontal line, follow the next step to adjust it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

5. Locate the vertical adjuster (1) for each headlamp. Adjust the aim by turning the adjuster control either clockwise (to adjust up) or counterclockwise (to adjust down).



6. In addition to the horizontal line marked in step 2, a pair of vertical lines (5) must be marked at the center line of the headlamps on the wall or screen.

7. On the wall or screen, locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern. The left edge of the high intensity area should be even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment. If the left edge of the high intensity area is not even with the vertical line, follow the next step to adjust it.

8. Locate the horizontal adjuster (2) for each headlamp. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise, to place the left edge of the high intensity area even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment.

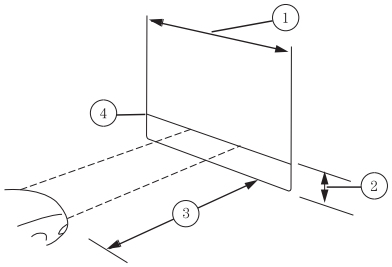
VERTICAL AIM ADJUSTMENT (AERODYNAMIC HEADLAMPS)

The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

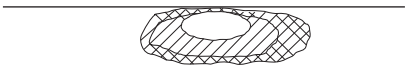
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line



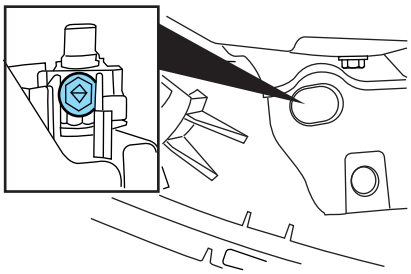
2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 mm circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



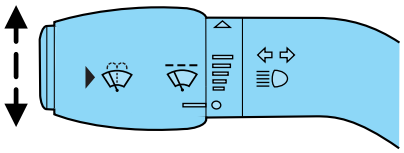
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on the back of each headlamp, then use a long Phillips #2 screwdriver to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern up to the horizontal line.

6. Repeat step 3–5 for the other headlamp.

7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

TURN SIGNAL CONTROL

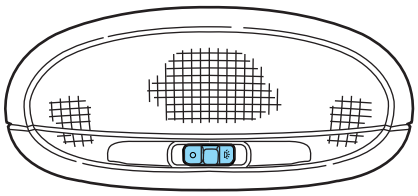
- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

INTERIOR LAMPS

Dome lamps with rear headliner (if equipped)



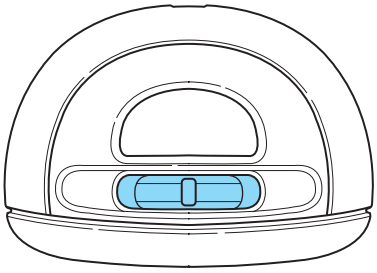
Dome lamps equipped with an on/off control will light when:

- doors are closed and the control is in the DOOR position
- control is in the middle position and any door is open
- headlamp control is rotated fully counterclockwise

When the control is in the ◯ position, it will not illuminate when you open the doors or fully rotate the headlamp control.

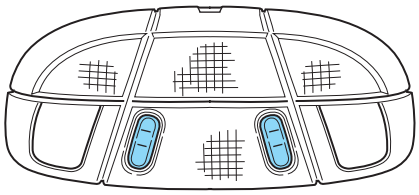
Cargo lamps

The dome portion of the cargo lamp, the center light, can be turned on when the headlamp control is rotated fully counterclockwise or when any door is opened.



With the ignition key in the accessory or on position, the rear lamp can be turned on or off by sliding the control.

Front and rear courtesy/reading lamps (if equipped)



The dome portion of the lamp, the center light, can be turned on when the headlamp control is rotated fully counterclockwise or when any door is opened.

The reading lamp portion, the two outer lights, can only be toggled on and off at the lamp.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

BULB REPLACEMENT

Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized “D.O.T.” for North America and an “E” for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Lights

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamps (aerodynamic)	2	H13/9008
Headlamps (sealed beam)	2	H6054
Park lamp with aerodynamic	2	3157A or 3157AK
Park lamp with sealed beam	2	3157K
Side marker with aerodynamic	2	168
Side marker with sealed beam	2	194
Back-up lamps	2	3156K or 3156
License plate lamp	1	168
Stop/tail/turn/side marker lamp	2	3157K
High-mount brake lamp	2	912
Cargo lamp	1	211-2
Dome lamp (standard)	1	912
Map/reading lamp	2	211-2
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer		

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Replacing exterior bulbs

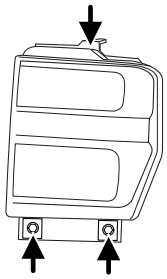
Check the operation of all bulbs frequently.

Replacing headlamp bulbs (aerodynamic)

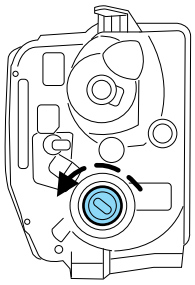
1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.

2. Remove the three screws from the headlamp assembly and pull the assembly straight out.

3. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward, then pulling it rearward.



4. Remove the bulb assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.



WARNING: Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with alcohol before being used.

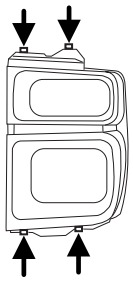
To install the new bulb, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

Replacing headlamps (sealed beam)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2. Remove the four screws from the headlamp assembly and carefully remove the lamp/bezel.



3. Remove the four screws and the retaining ring.

4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the lamp and remove the lamp.

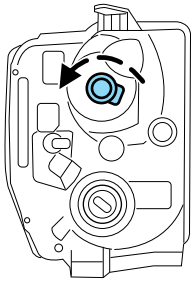
To install the new lamp, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal bulbs

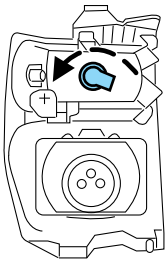
1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.

2. Remove the headlamp assembly. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in this section.

Aerodynamic



Sealed beam



3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

4. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

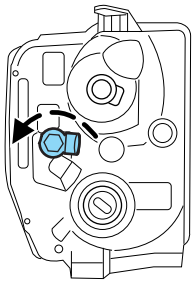
To complete installation, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

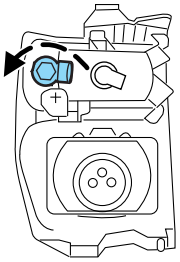
Replacing side marker bulbs

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in this section.

Aerodynamic



Sealed beam



3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
4. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

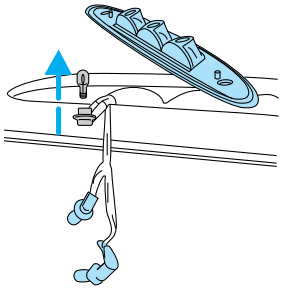
To complete installation, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Replacing high-mount brake lamp bulbs

On vehicles without a rear headliner, the interior cargo lamp (if equipped) must be removed from under the high-mount brake lamp assembly located inside the vehicle. Then, do the following:

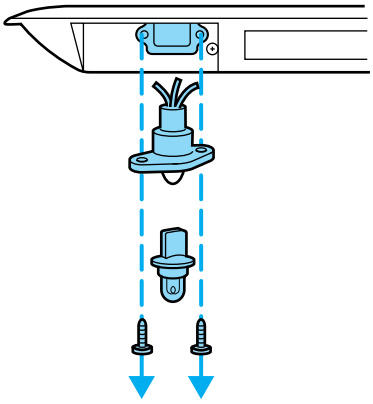
1. Remove the two screws from the high-mount brake lamp assembly and lift the lamp from the vehicle.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



To install the new bulb, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.

Replacing license plate lamp bulbs

1. Turn the headlamp switch to the off position.
2. Remove the two screws and the license plate lamp assembly from the rear door.
3. Remove bulb socket from lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb out from socket and push in the new bulb.



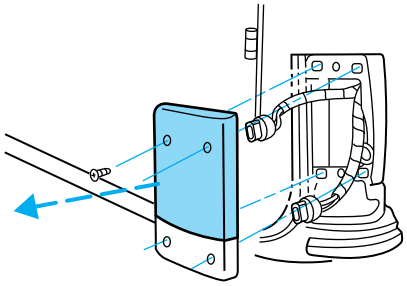
To install the new bulb, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

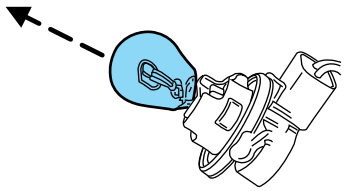
Replacing stop/turn/tail/side marker/backup lamp bulbs

The stop/turn/tail/side marker/backup lamp bulbs are located in the tail lamp assembly. Follow the same steps to replace any of the bulbs:

1. Turn the headlamp switch to the off position, then remove the four screws and the lamp assembly from the vehicle.



2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

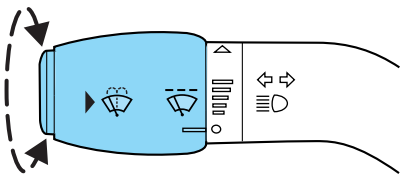


To install the lamp, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

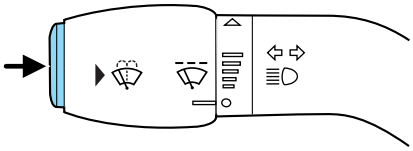
MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

Windshield wiper: Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



Windshield washer: Press the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick press and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long press and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to ten seconds.



Courtesy wipe feature: One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

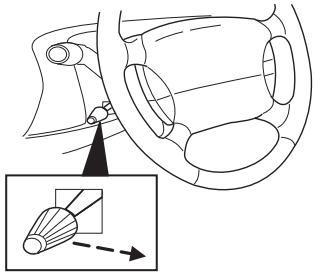
Note: Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

TILT STEERING WHEEL

To adjust the steering wheel:

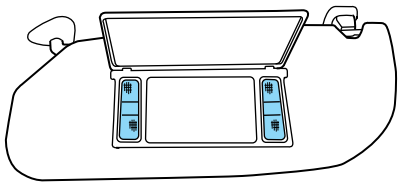
1. Pull and hold the steering wheel release control toward you.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down until you find the desired location.
3. Release the steering wheel release control. This will lock the steering wheel in position.



WARNING: Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamp.



AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12V DC)

Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

Auxiliary power points can be found in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel, equipped with a cover or a cap plug
- Behind the driver's seat on the upper trim panel (if equipped)
- In the glove box

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Note: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12V DC/180W. If the power point is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

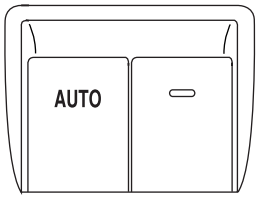
POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Press down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

One-touch down

Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches and radio may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the off position, or until any door is opened.

INTERIOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror up or down and from side to side.

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

The interior rear view mirror has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.

Note: A rear center passenger and/or raised rear center headrest (if equipped) may also block the light from reaching the sensor.

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Note: If equipped with a rearview camera system, a video image will display in the mirror or the navigation system display (if equipped) when the vehicle is put in R (Reverse). As you shift into any other gear from R (Reverse), the image will remain for a few seconds and then turn off. Refer to *Rearview camera system* in the *Driving* chapter.

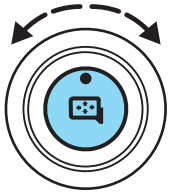
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power side view mirrors (if equipped)

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

To adjust your mirrors:

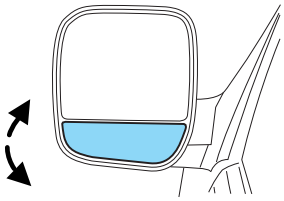


1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

Spotter mirror (if equipped)

Note: New spotter mirrors may be stiff, requiring several cycles before the spotter adjustment effort eases.

Spotter mirror on standard mirror (if equipped)

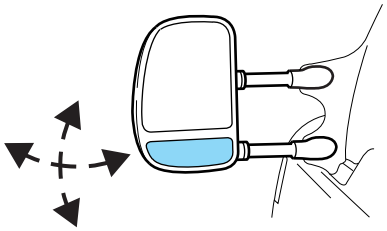


The spotter mirror only can be tilted from top to bottom. Move the lower mirror manually up/down to increase side and rear visibility. Apply pressure only in the center of the spotter mirror along the top or bottom edges to adjust the tilt feature. **Do not apply any force on the left or right edges of the standard mirror spotter section, as this may lead to a mirror fracture.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

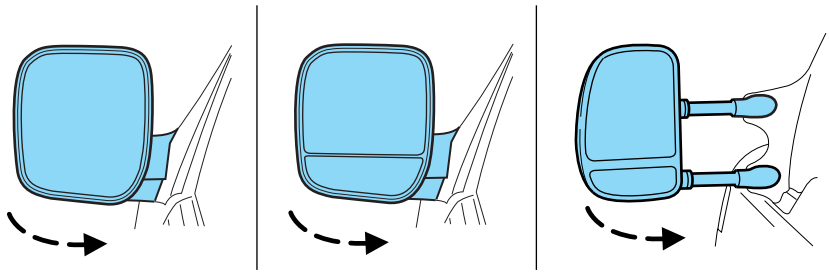
Spotter mirror on telescoping mirror (if equipped)

The spotter mirror has a swivel that allows it to tilt up and down, and also to tilt left and right to increase side and rear visibility.

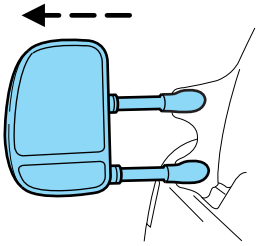


Fold-away mirrors

The mirrors can be manually folded forward or backwards for narrow spaces like driving through an automatic car wash or backing out of a garage with the trailer tow mirror.



The telescoping feature (if equipped) allows the mirror to extend approximately 3.15 inches (80 mm). This feature is especially useful to the driver when towing a trailer.



Blind spot mirrors (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with blind spot mirrors. Refer to *Blind spot mirrors* in the *Driving* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

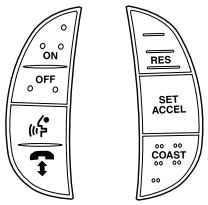
SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

WARNING: Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

Using speed control

The speed controls are located on the steering wheel. The following buttons work with speed control.



ON: Press to turn on speed control.

OFF: Press to turn off speed control.

RES (Resume): Press to resume a set speed.

SET/ACCEL: Press to set a speed or increase a set speed.

COAST: Press to reduce a set speed.

Setting speed control

1. Press and release ON.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET/ACCEL.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator light on the instrument cluster will turn on.

Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

Disengaging speed control

To disengage speed control, press the brake pedal. Disengaging speed control will not erase the previous set speed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Resuming a set speed

Press and release RES. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.

Increasing speed while using speed control

To increase the set speed:

- Press and hold SET/ACCEL until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET/ACCEL to operate the tap-up function. Press and release SET/ACCEL to increase the vehicle set speed in 1 mph (1.6 km/h) increments.
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed, press and release SET/ACCEL.

Reducing speed while using speed control

To reduce the set speed:

- Press and hold COAST until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use COAST to operate the tap-down function. Press and release COAST to decrease the vehicle set speed in 1 mph (1.6 km/h) increments.
- Press the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, then press and release SET/ACCEL.

Turning off speed control

To turn off the speed control, press OFF or turn off the ignition.

Note: When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

SYNC® system hands free control feature (if equipped)

Press briefly to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold to exit voice command.

Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to end a call or exit phone mode.

For further information on the SYNC® system, refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

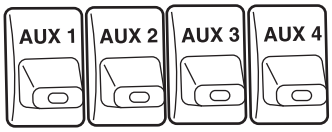
Navigation system/SYNC® hands free control features (if equipped)

Press control briefly until the voice icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to exit phone mode or end a call.

For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC® system, refer to the *Navigation System* and *SYNC®* supplements.

UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)



Your vehicle may be equipped with the Upfitter option package which will provide four switches, mounted in the center of the instrument panel, labeled AUX 1, AUX 2, AUX 3 and AUX 4. These switches will only operate while the ignition is in the on position, whether the engine is running or not. It is, however, recommended that the engine remain running to maintain battery charge when using the Upfitter switches for extended duration or higher current draws.

When switched on by the operator they provide 10 amps, 15 amps or 30 amps of electrical battery power for a variety of personal or commercial uses.

If your vehicle is equipped with this option, a relay/fuse kit will be included. This kit contains the required fuses and relays that need to be installed into the Power Distribution Box located under the hood. Refer to the instruction sketch included in the kit and *Fuses and Relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter. See your authorized dealer for service.

There will also be one power lead for each switch found as a blunt-cut and sealed wire located in the underhood cowl shield above the engine block PCM.

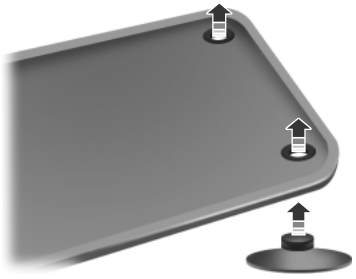
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

They are coded as follows:

Switch	Circuit number	Wire color	Fuse
AUX 1	CAC05	Yellow	30A
AUX 2	CAC06	Green with Brown Trace	30A
AUX 3	CAC07	Violet with Green Trace	10A
AUX 4	CAC08	Brown	15A

More detailed information about Upfitter switches can be found at https://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/.

POSITIVE RETENTION FLOOR MAT (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

- Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING (Continued)

- Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.
- Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.
- Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.
- To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.
- To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

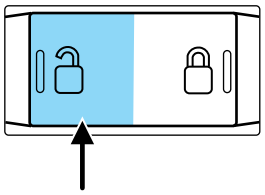
KEYS

The key operates all locks on your vehicle. You should always carry a second key with you in a safe place in case you require it in an emergency.

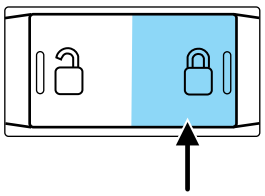
If your vehicle is equipped with the SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system, your keys are electronically coded to your vehicle; using a non-coded key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your dealer supplied keys, replacement keys are available through your authorized dealer.

POWER DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

Press control to unlock all doors.



Press control to lock all doors.



Memory lock

If you lock your doors with the power lock switch or the remote transmitter while the sliding door is open, the door will automatically lock after it is closed.

Autolock feature

Note: Your vehicle comes with the autolock feature disabled.

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the on position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the on position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

Deactivating/activating autolock feature

Your vehicle comes with the autolock feature disabled; there are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

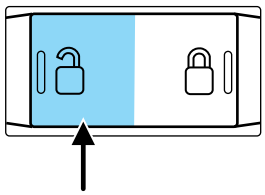
- Through your authorized dealer, or
- by using a power door unlock/lock procedure, or
- by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Note: The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

Power door lock switch autolock enable/disable procedure

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.



3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Autounlock feature

After the autolock feature has locked the doors, the autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned off or to accessory; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off or to accessory.

Note: The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

Deactivating/activating autounlock feature

Your vehicle comes with the autounlock features disabled; there are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

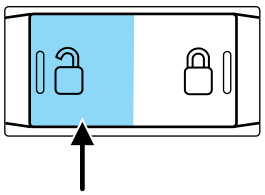
- Through your authorized dealer, or
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence, or
- by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Note: The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

Power door lock switch autounlock enable/disable procedure

Before starting, ensure the ignition is off and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.



5. Turn the ignition back on. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.

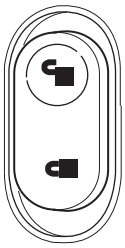
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.

7. Turn the ignition off. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

Back cargo door lock (if equipped)

The passenger side rear cargo door has a power door lock control mounted on the inside of the door. When this lock is pressed, all doors will lock/unlock.



E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ (if equipped)

The E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ insures that the side and cargo doors are double locked for extra security.

E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ features

- The E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ is available with either power or manual door locks.
- The E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ provides extra security via a double-locked design.
- The cargo doors can only be unlocked from the outside by using the keys.
- The power unlock feature (if equipped with power door locks) will only unlock the front doors.
- The E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ is equipped with an emergency unlock handle installed in the door inner panel.

E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ procedure

For vehicles equipped with power door locks:

- Lock the vehicle with the key, manual door lock, key fob or use the power door lock on the front door trim panel. The front doors are locked and the cargo doors are double-locked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Unlock the vehicle with the key fob or use the power door lock on the front door. The front doors are unlocked and the cargo doors remain double-locked.
- **The only way to unlock the side or back cargo doors from outside vehicle is with the key.**

For vehicles equipped with manual door locks:

- The front door locks can be locked by using either the key or the manual door lock.
- In order to activate the E-Guard Cargo Protection System™, use the key or the manual door lock to lock the side and back cargo doors.
- **The cargo doors cannot be unlocked using the manual door lock.**

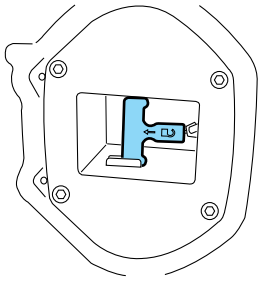
WARNING: If equipped with E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ occupants may become trapped in the cargo area unless the exit procedure is followed. The cargo doors cannot be unlocked using manual or power door locks or key fob. In an emergency, to exit the cargo area, locate the emergency handle in the rear door or side door, pull the emergency handle to unlock the door, then unlatch the door using the inside release handle.

Emergency lock release

The emergency handle in the door trim panel unlocks the E-Guard Cargo Protection System™.

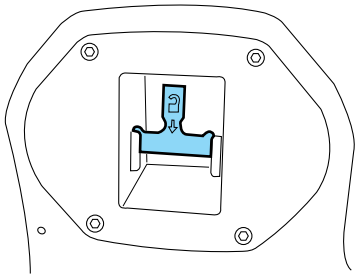
The emergency handles are located in the following areas:

- The side door emergency handle is located on the door inner trim panel in the speaker cup.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- The rear door handle is located in the rear door below the glass.



To open the side or back cargo doors from the inside:

1. Unlock the E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ using the emergency handle.

2. Unlatch the door using the inside release handle.

REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

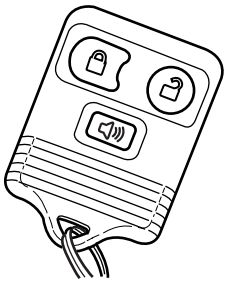
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



The remote entry system allows you to lock or unlock all vehicle doors without a key.

Note: The lock and unlock features work when the ignition is in any position. The panic feature is active regardless of the ignition positions.

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL remote entry transmitters** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

Note: If the vehicle is equipped with the E-Guard Cargo Protection System™ the remote transmitter Unlock command will only unlock the front doors; the only way to unlock the side or rear cargo doors from outside the vehicle is with the key.

Two step door unlocking

1. Press and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors and the rear cargo doors.

The battery saver feature will turn off the interior lamp 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to the off position.

One step door unlocking

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press and release once to unlock the passenger doors and the rear cargo doors. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section), if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Switching from two step to one step door unlocking

Your vehicle comes with two step unlocking enabled. With the vehicle locked, unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both the and buttons simultaneously on the remote entry transmitter for approximately four seconds and release. The park lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two-step unlocking.

Locking the doors

1. Press and release to lock all the doors. If all doors are closed the parking lamps illuminate.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the turn lamps will flash and the horn will chirp once. If any door is ajar the lamps will not flash and the horn will chirp twice.

Car finder

Press twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding a panic alarm

Press to activate the alarm. Press the control again, or turn the ignition to the accessory or on position to deactivate the alarm.

Note: The panic alarm will operate regardless of the ignition position.

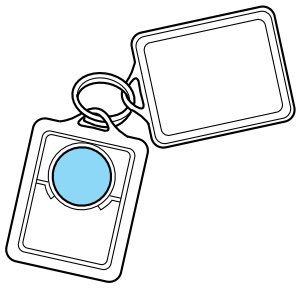
Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

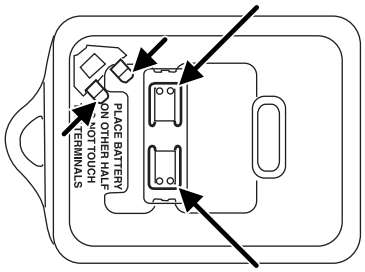
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.



2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.



3. Remove the old battery.

Note: Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

Note: Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.

Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

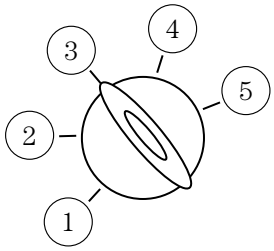
If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

How to reprogram your remote entry transmitters

You must have **all remote entry transmitters** (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure. If all remote entry transmitters are not present during programming procedure, the ones missing during programming will no longer operate the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Note: Ensure the brake pedal is not depressed during this sequence.



To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:

1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Place the key in the ignition and turn from the 2 (lock) position to 3 (off).
3. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the 3 (off) position and 4 (on). **Note:** The eighth turn must end in the 4 (on) position.
4. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.
5. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter. **Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
6. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.
7. Repeat step 5 to program each additional remote entry transmitter (up to four transmitters).
8. Turn the ignition to the 3 (off) position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters.
9. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.

Illuminated entry

The interior lamps and parking lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s) or sound the personal alarm.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the on or accessory position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the off position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The interior lamps will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a "no-start" condition.

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

Note: The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

Note: Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located in the instrument cluster.

Vehicles equipped with the SecuriLock® Passive Anti-theft system behave as follows:

- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will flash once every two seconds for a total of 10 seconds to indicate the SecuriLock® system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate a programmed key has been validated and the SecuriLock® Passive Anti-theft system has enabled the engine.

Vehicles without the SecuriLock® Passive Anti-theft system behave as follows:

- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will not flash.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate the engine is enabled.

Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition to the off position.

Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition to the on position with a **coded key** disarms the vehicle.

Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

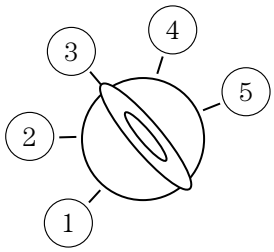
Programming spare keys

You can program your own coded keys to your vehicle. Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Tips:

- A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle.
- Only use SecuriLock® keys.
- You must have two previously programmed coded keys (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible.
- If no previously programmed coded keys are available, you must take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare key(s) programmed.



1. Insert a previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Turn the ignition from the 2 (lock) position to the 4 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 4 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition to the 2 (lock) position, and remove the coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the other previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
5. Turn the ignition from the 2 (lock) position to the 4 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 4 (on) position for at least one second but not more than 10 seconds.
6. Turn the ignition to the 2 (lock) position, and remove the second key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 20 seconds of removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Turn the ignition from the 2 (lock) position to the 4 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 4 (on) position for at least one second.
9. Your new key is now programmed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will illuminate for three seconds and then go out. If the key was not successfully programmed, it will not start your vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will flash on and off rapidly. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new key(s) programmed.

To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), repeat this procedure from Step 1 for each additional key.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

FRONT SEATS

WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

WARNING: Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

WARNING: Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

WARNING: Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

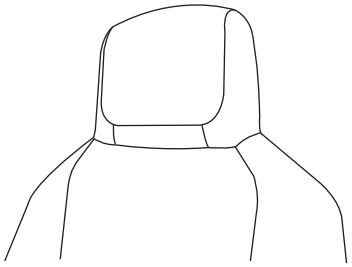
Non-adjustable head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard non-adjustable head restraints.

WARNING: To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the seatback is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the seatback while the vehicle is in motion.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seatback.



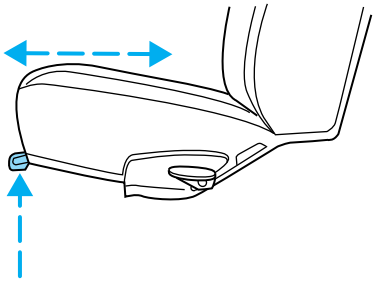
Properly adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

Adjusting the front manual seat (if equipped)

WARNING: Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

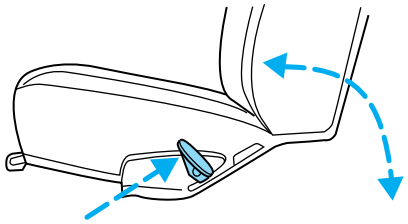
WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

Lift handle to move seat forward or backward.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

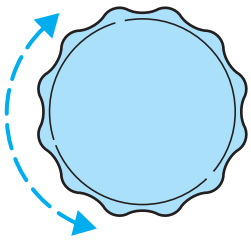
Pull lever up to adjust seatback.



WARNING: Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

Using the manual lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support control is located on the inboard side of the driver's seat.



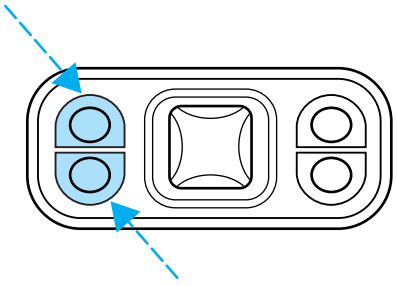
Turn the lumbar support control clockwise to increase firmness.

Turn the lumbar support control counterclockwise to increase softness.

Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)

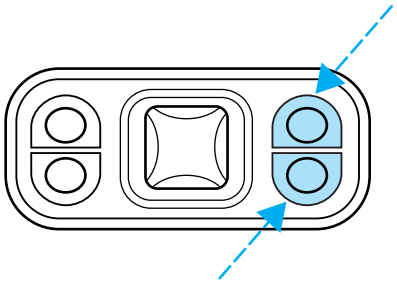
The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

Press to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.

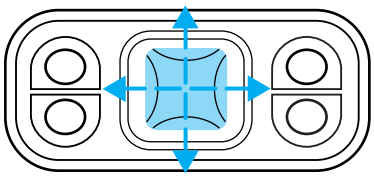


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Press to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.



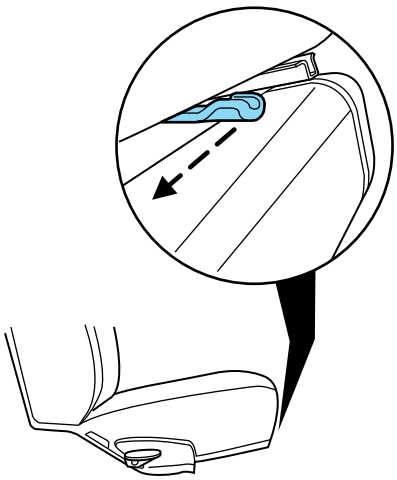
Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.



REAR SEATS

Rear captains chair adjust — passenger side only

Pull the lever to adjust the seat forward or backward.

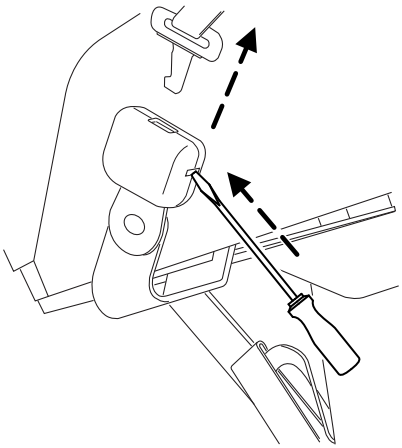


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

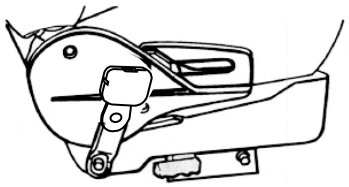
Quick-release captains chair (7 passenger configuration- second row only)

To remove the seat:

1. Disengage the lap/shoulder belt from the seat by inserting a key or small screwdriver into the slot in the detachable anchor and lifting upward.



2. Pull the seat latch handle, then pull the seat toward the right side of the vehicle to disengage four pins from the floor mount.
3. Remove the seat.



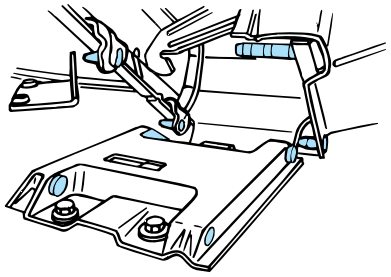
To install the seat:

WARNING: Check to see that the seat and seatback is latched securely in position. Keep floor area free of objects that would prevent proper seat engagement. Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING: Ensure that the seat is latched to the vehicle floor by pushing/pulling on the seat. If not latched, the seat may cause injury during a sudden stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

1. Position the seat to the floor mount.



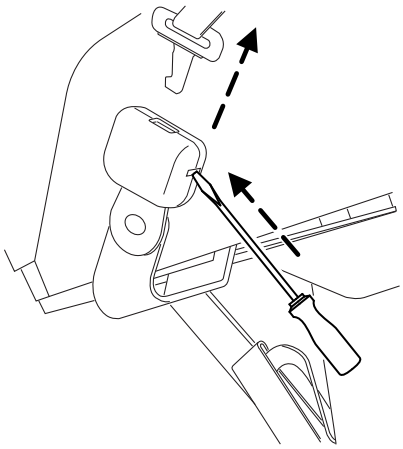
2. Pull the seat latch handle downward to lock the seat in position.

3. Make sure the safety belt is not twisted, then insert the safety belt tongue into the detachable anchor until you hear a “click” and feel the latch engage.

Rear bench seat

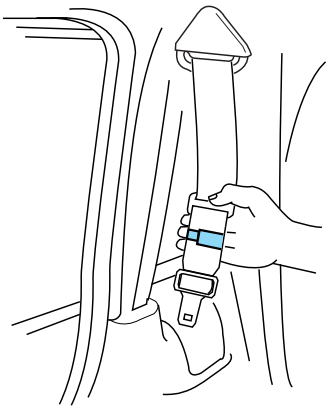
To remove the seats:

1. Disengage the lap/shoulder belt from the seat by inserting a key or small screwdriver into the slot in the detachable anchor and lifting upward (2nd row passenger side only).

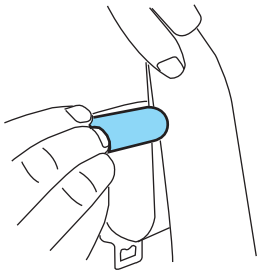


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2. Find the clips attached near the ends of the lap/shoulder belts.

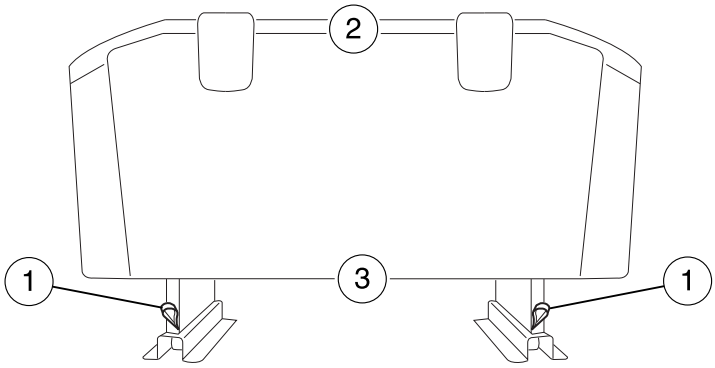


3. Clip the end of the belt to the stationary portion of the shoulder belt coming out of the trim panel.



The end of the shoulder belt **must** be clipped in order to keep it from striking anything during vehicle operation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



4. With assistance, pull the LH/RH seat latch release straps (1) (located behind the latch mechanisms) to release the latch from the rear strikers.

5. Lift the rear end of seat upward and rearward by pushing on the seatback (2) and lifting the seat cushion (3) to disengage the front seat hook and the rear seat latch from the striker.

6. With assistance, remove the seat assembly.

- To remove the 3rd, 4th, and 5th row seats (if equipped), repeat Steps 1 through 6.

To install the seat:

WARNING: Ensure that the seat is installed or removed from the striker pins with adequate ergonomic assistance. Due to the weight of the seat, it must be handled by at least two adults during installation or removal from the vehicle.

WARNING: Ensure that the seat is latched to the vehicle floor by pushing/pulling on the seat or seatback (2). If not latched, the seat may cause injury during a sudden stop.

1. Please make sure the floor striker area is clean of any debris that would prevent the seat from latching.

2. With assistance, position the seat in the vehicle.

3. Align the front hooks to the LH/RH front striker pins prior to lowering the rear latch mechanism and aligning them with the rear striker pins.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

4. Engage the front LH/RH hooks to the LH/RH front striker pins.
5. After the front LH/RH hooks are engaged to the LH/RH front striker pins, pull LH/RH seat latch release straps to allow engagement of the latch to the striker pins. Refer to the illustration in *To remove the rear seats* above.
6. Pull/push seat back forward/backward to check for proper seat installation.

WARNING: Always latch the vehicle seat to the floor, whether the seat is occupied or empty. If not latched, the seat may cause injury during a sudden stop.

WARNING: Do not hang or attach any cargo to the release straps of the rear bench seats. Doing so could cause the release straps to inadvertently unlatch the rear bench seat. If not latched, the seat may cause serious injury during a sudden stop.

SAFETY RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

WARNING: Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

WARNING: All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

WARNING: Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

WARNING: When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

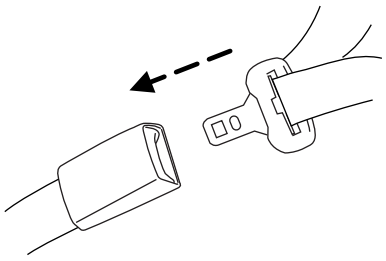
WARNING: Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

WARNING: Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

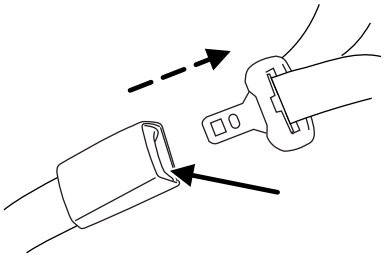
- Front and rear seats



2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

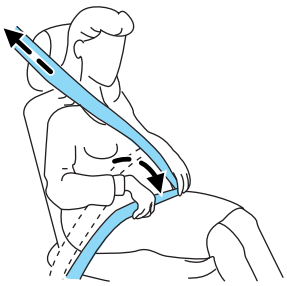
- Front and rear seats



Restraint of pregnant women

WARNING: Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See figure below.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.



Safety belt locking modes

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first locking mode and the passenger safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic locking mode

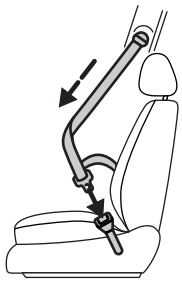
In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to use the automatic locking mode

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

How to use the automatic locking mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt (front safety belt/buckle shown, rear similar).
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to disengage the automatic locking mode

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

WARNING: After any vehicle collision, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly "automatic locking retractor" feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

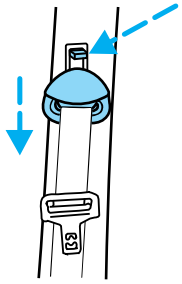
Safety belt pretensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners at the driver and front outboard passenger seating positions.

The safety belt pretensioner tightens the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body at the start of the crash.

WARNING: The driver and front passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in deployment of front airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Front safety belt height adjustment



The front seat and outboard positions are equipped with a height adjuster. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, push the button and slide the height adjuster down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place. To adjust the belt upward, slide the adjuster up. Pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

WARNING: Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and the warning chime will remain off.

Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders to the driver that the driver's safety belt is unbuckled by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster.

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled approximately 5 seconds after the safety belt warning light has turned off...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until safety belt is buckled.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the safety belt indicator light is illuminated and the safety belt warning chime is sounding...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts: (All statistics based on U.S. data)

Reasons given...	Consider...
"Crashes are rare events"	**36700 crashes occur every day.** The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. *1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.*
"I'm not going far"	**3 of 4** fatal crashes occur within **25** miles of home.
"Belts are uncomfortable"	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
"I was in a hurry"	**Prime time for an accident.** Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
"Safety belts don't work"	**Safety belts,** when used properly, **reduce risk of death** to front seat occupants by **45% in cars,** and by **60% in light trucks.**
"Traffic is light"	**Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes,** many when no other vehicles are around.
"Belts wrinkle my clothes"	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
"The people I'm with don't wear belts"	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Reasons given...	Consider...
"I have an airbag"	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
"I'd rather be thrown clear"	**People** who are **ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE.** Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH".

WARNING: Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's air bag system

One-time disable

Any time the safety belt is buckled and then unbuckled during an ignition on cycle, the Belt-Minder® will be disabled for that ignition cycle only.

Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature

Read Steps 1 - 5 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.

The Belt-Minder® feature can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- the parking brake is set
- the gearshift is in P (Park)
- the ignition switch is in the off position
- all vehicle doors and the hood are closed
- the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
- the parking lamps/headlamps are in the off position

WARNING: While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. DO NOT START THE ENGINE.

2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (Approximately one minute).

- Step 3 must be completed within 30 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

3. Buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending with the safety belt in the unbuckled state.

- After Step 3 is complete, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.
- Belt-Minder® will automatically exit programming mode without changing its enable status if Step 4 does not occur within 10 seconds of the end of Step 3.

4. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

5. After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

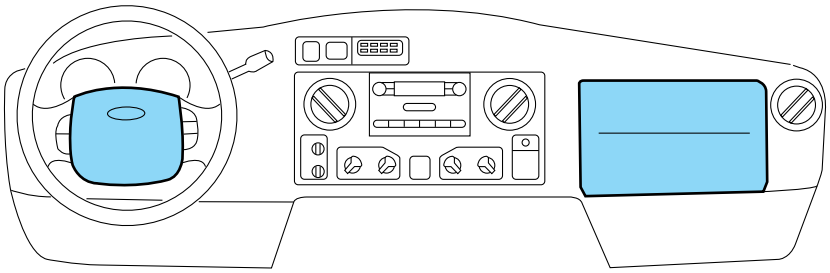
Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

Use the shortest extender assembly that will provide adequate fit.

WARNING: Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

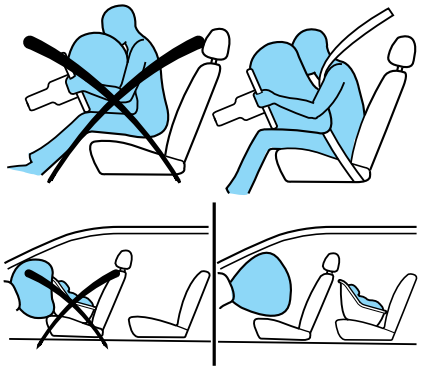
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



WARNING: All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

WARNING: Always transport children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position, and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must transport a forward-facing child in the front seat, move the seat all the way back and use appropriate restraints.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

WARNING: Never place your arm over the air bag module as a deploying air bag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

WARNING: Do not put anything on or over the air bag module. Placing objects on or over the air bag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the air bag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

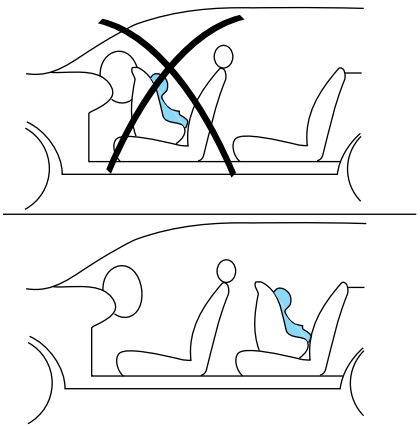
WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING: Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

WARNING: Additional equipment may affect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

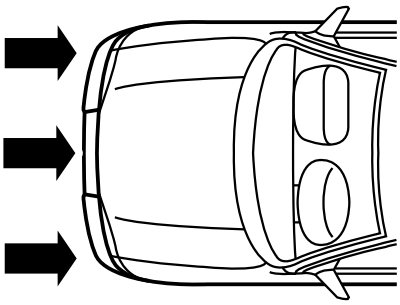
Children and airbags



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?



The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains a longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the airbag sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not sufficient enough to cause activation. Airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder or sodium compounds which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the SRS is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. It is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags)
- one or more impact and safing sensors
- safety belt pretensioners
- a readiness light and tone
- a diagnostic module
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag backup power and the airbag ignitors.

WARNING: Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.

- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

SOS Post-Crash Alert System™

The system automatically flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn three times at four second intervals in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain [if equipped] or Safety Canopy® [if equipped]) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The system can be turned off when any one of the following actions are taken by the driver or any other person:

- pressing the hazard control button,
- or pressing the panic button on the remote entry transmitter.

The feature will continue to operate until the vehicle runs out of power.

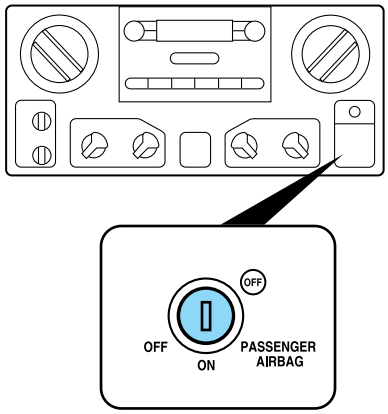
Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

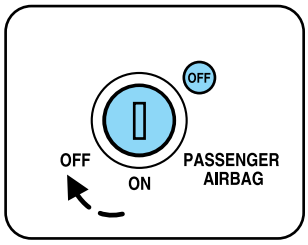
Note: The passenger airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped) may be on vehicles with no rear seats and a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) greater than 8500 lb (3856 kg). See *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* in the *Tires, Wheels and loading* chapter.



WARNING: An airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped) may have been installed in this vehicle. Before driving, *always* look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

Turning the passenger airbag off

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF position and hold in OFF position while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned to the ON position the OFF light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.



WARNING: If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger air bag switch is in the OFF position and the ignition switch is in ON, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

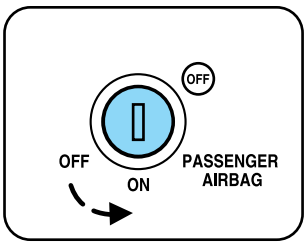
WARNING: In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.

WARNING: An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.

Turning the passenger airbag back on

The passenger airbag remains OFF until you turn it back ON.

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The OFF light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to On. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.



WARNING: If the OFF light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is in the ON position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at an authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger side airbag should always be ON (the airbag OFF light should *not* be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: The safety belts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn OFF your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your safety belt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning OFF the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

WARNING: If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in a rear seating position. Always use safety belts and child restraints properly. DO NOT place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag ON/OFF switch and the passenger airbag is turned OFF. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of safety belts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the safety belts, because safety belts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

Read all airbag warning labels in the vehicle as well as the other important airbag instructions and warnings in this *Owner's Guide*.

NHTSA deactivation criteria (excluding Canada)

1. **Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- the vehicle has no rear seat;

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- the vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
- the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

2. **Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:

- the vehicle has no rear seat;
- although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or
- the child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:

- causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and
- makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.

WARNING: This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Transport Canada deactivation criteria (Canada Only)

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- my vehicle has no rear seat;
- the rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
- the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.

2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:

- my vehicle has no rear seat;
- although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient; or
- the child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:

- poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys; and
- makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag

WARNING: This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

Important child restraint precautions

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at http://www.sfa.ca, or Transport Canada at 1–800–333–0371 (http://www.tc.gc.ca). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	**Recommended restraint type**
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in. (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	

WARNING: Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

WARNING: Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

WARNING: Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

WARNING: Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

WARNING: Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

WARNING: Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at http://www.sfa.ca, or Transport Canada at 1–800–333–0371 (http://www.tc.gc.ca).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

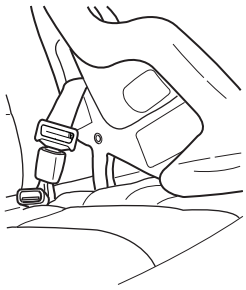
SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to step 5 below. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

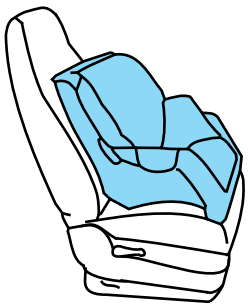
WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

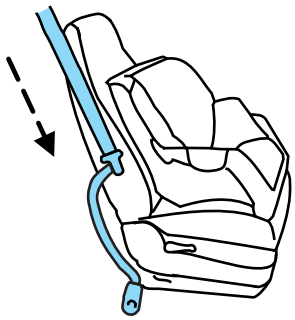
Note: Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

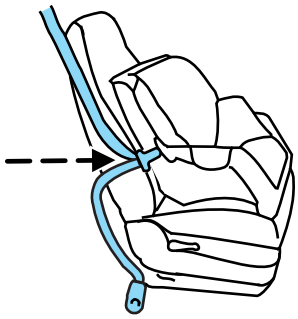
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

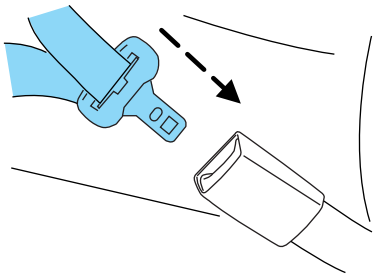


3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.

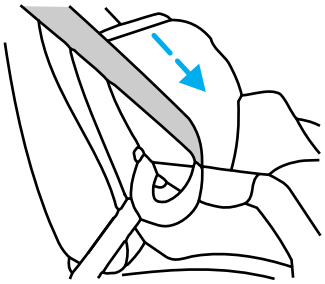


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

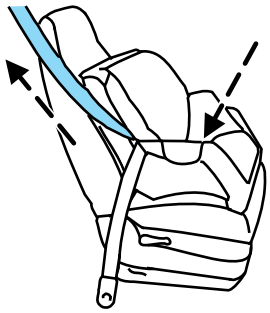


5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.



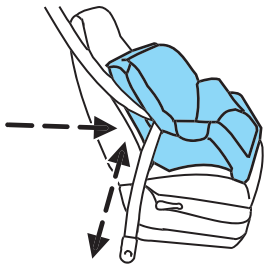
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

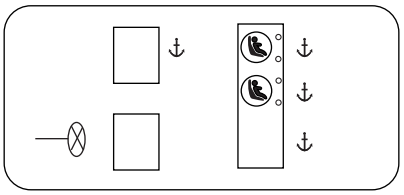
Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) attachments

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

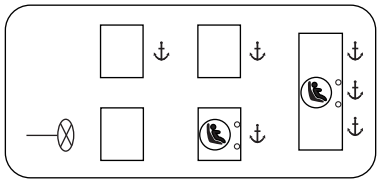
LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat. Ford Motor Company recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

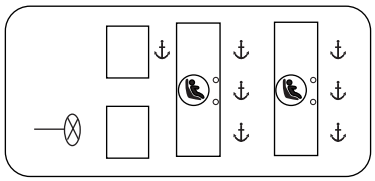
Your vehicle has LATCH lower and/or top tether anchors at the following locations:



- Five passenger crew van

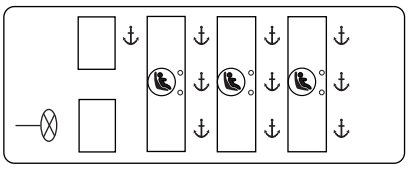


- Seven passenger wagon

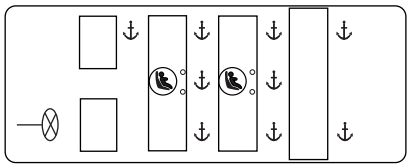


- Eight passenger wagon

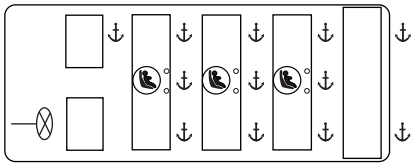
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



- Eleven passenger wagon



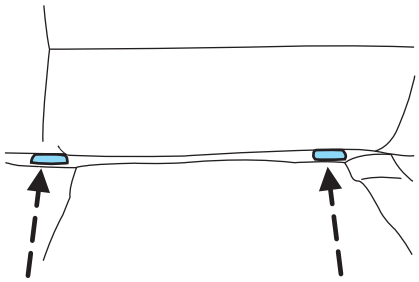
- Twelve passenger wagon



- Fifteen passenger wagon

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The LATCH lower anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.



Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

WARNING: Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining safety belt and LATCH lower anchors for attaching child safety seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat. Refer to *Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children* in this chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

WARNING: When using forward-facing child safety seats in vehicles with only two seating positions or the forward-facing child safety seat cannot be placed in the rear of the vehicle, move the passenger seat as far back from the instrument panel as possible.

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The front passenger and rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

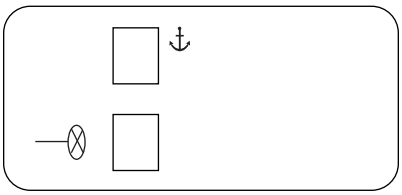
If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, and have attached the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

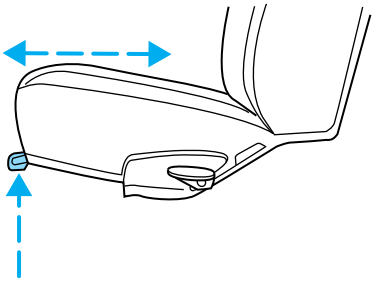
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Front passenger seating position

The tether can be attached directly to the rear of the front seat.

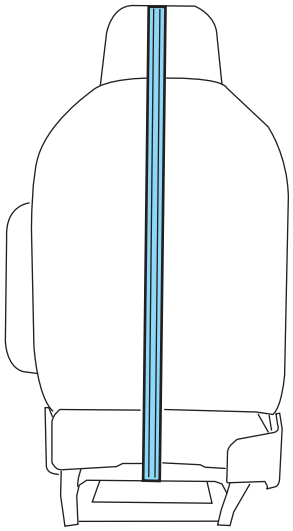


1. Adjust the front right-hand passenger seat full forward.



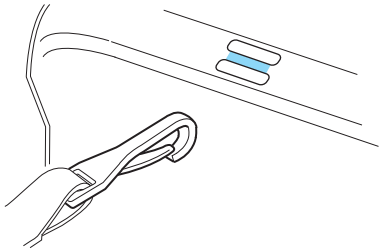
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the front right-hand passenger seat as shown.



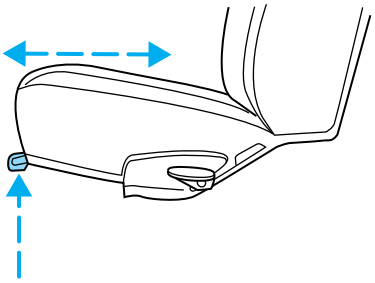
3. Clip the tether strap hook to the seat pedestal at the location shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

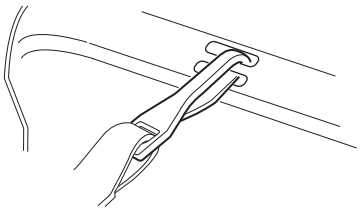


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

4. Adjust the front right hand passenger seat to the full rearward position.



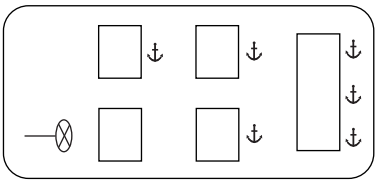
5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

Second row bucket seats (Quads)

The tether strap can be attached directly to the tether bracket under the back edge of the seat cushion.

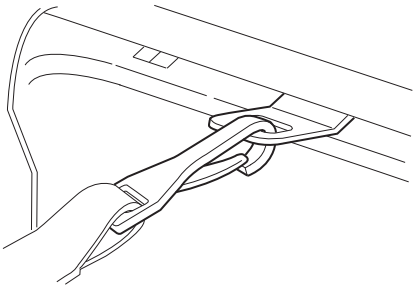


1. Route the child safety tether strap over the back of the left hand or right hand second row bucket seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2. Clip the tether strap hook to the seat pedestal at the location shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

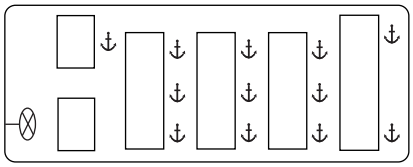


3. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth row bench seats

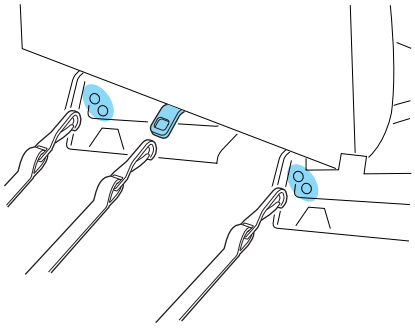
For the center position of a three-passenger bench seat, the tether strap can be attached directly to the tether bracket provided under the back edge of the seat cushion. For the outboard positions, the tether strap can be attached to the slot in the side of the seat pedestal.



1. For any three-passenger bench seat, place the child safety seat in any of the seating positions. For the four passenger bench, the tether anchors are located on the left and right hand positions only.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2. Route the child safety tether strap over the back of the bench seat.



3. For any three passenger bench, clip the center tether strap hook to the tether bracket mounted under rear rail of seat cushion frame. For either the three or four passenger bench, clip the outboard tether strap hooks to the tether bracket slot provided on the left side of each seat pedestal. The slot is located between the two holes.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

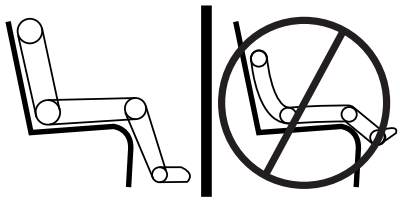
Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

When children should use booster seats

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Types of booster seats

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- Backless booster seats

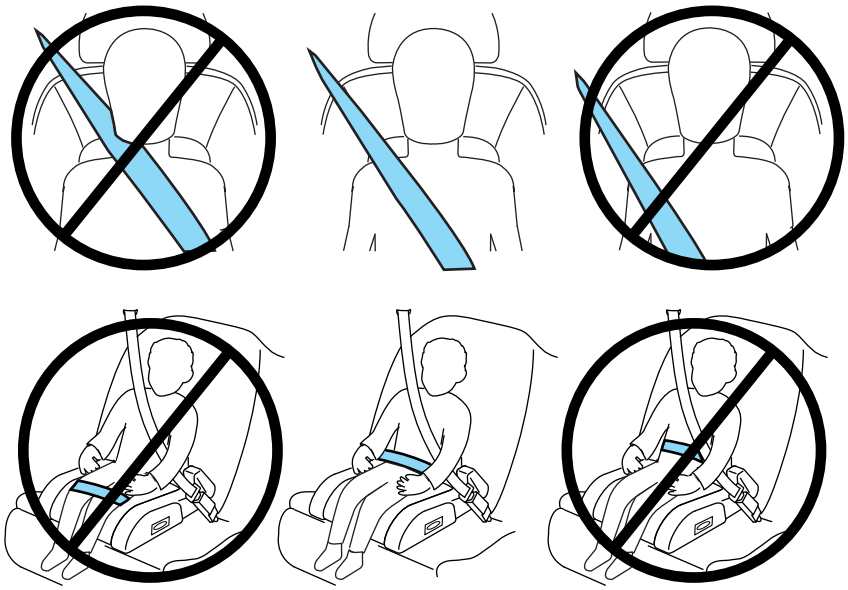
If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

The importance of shoulder belts

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.

WARNING: Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Child restraint and safety belt maintenance

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

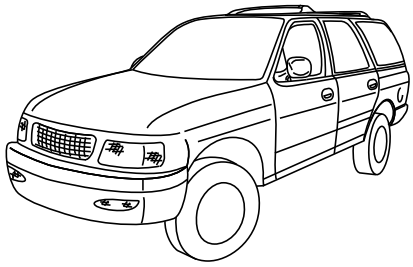
For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

WARNING: Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

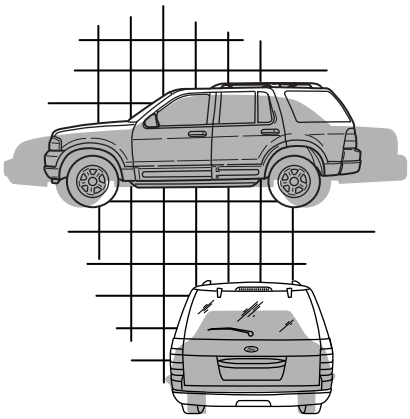
Study your owner's guide and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

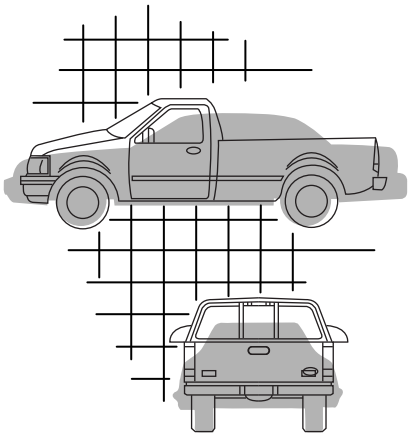
VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUVs and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower – to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



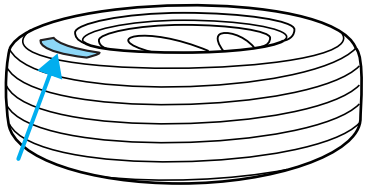
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUVs and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or "blowout", with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

Note: If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

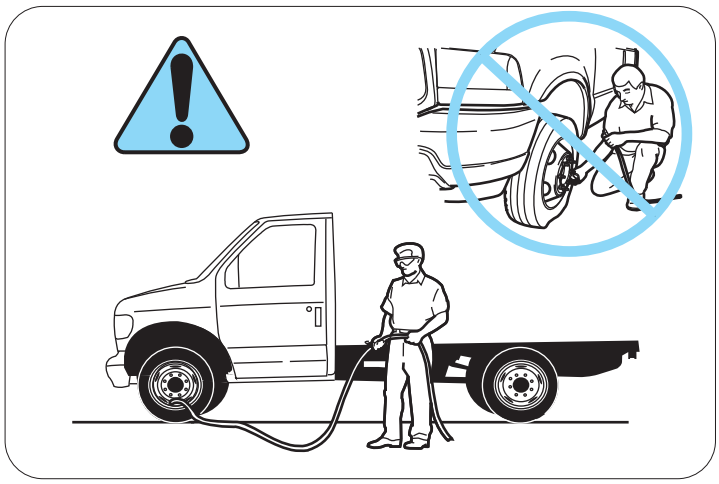
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Tire inflation information

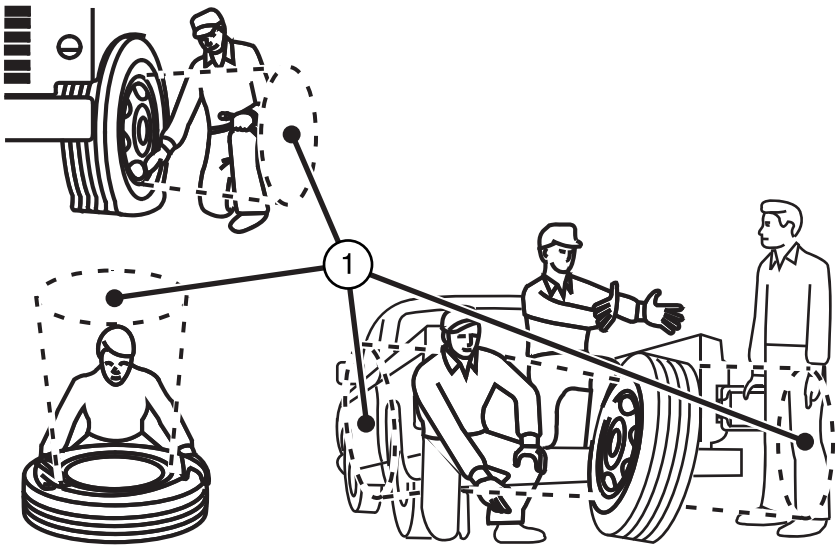
All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



WARNING: An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To reduce the risk of serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



WARNING: Stay out of the trajectory (1) as indicated in the illustration.

TIRE CARE

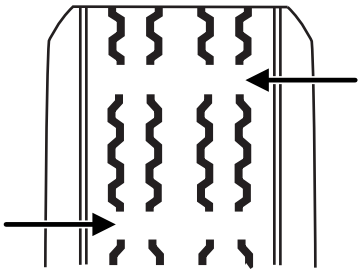
Inspecting your tires and wheel valve stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Tire wear



When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

WARNING: Age
Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.
You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire replacement requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver’s door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.
When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.
Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

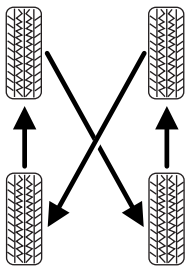
The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Rear-wheel drive (RWD) vehicles/Four-wheel drive (4WD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

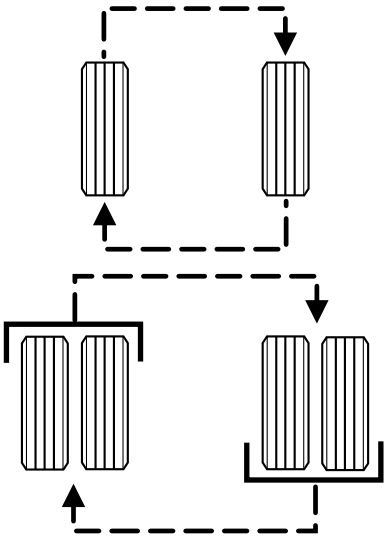
Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system), then the settings for the TPMS sensors need to be updated. Always perform the TPMS reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the TPMS reset procedure in this chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Dual rear wheel (DRW) vehicles – Six tire rotation

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that the front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side. We do not recommend splitting up the dual rear wheels. Rotate them side to side as a set/pair. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask your authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

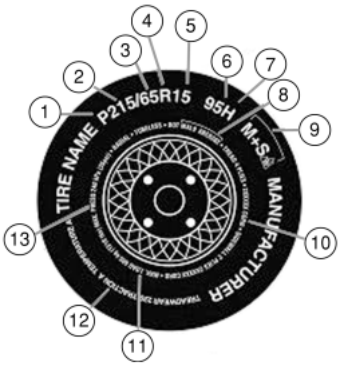
Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Information on “P” type tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

Note: If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner’s guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)
Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.	

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or
AT: All Terrain, or
AS: All Season.

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

12. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades**

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for "LT" type tires

"LT" type tires have some additional information beyond those of "P" type tires; these differences are described below.

Note: Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

2. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

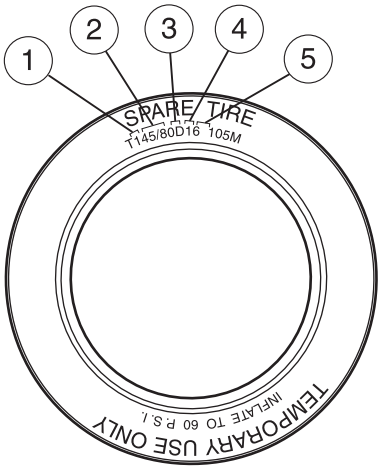
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.



1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.
R: Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

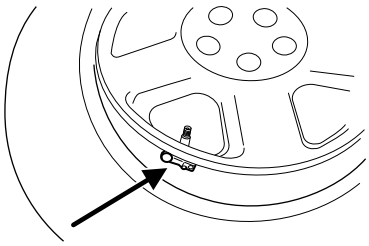
When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Changing tires with a TPMS



Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire/wheel cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.
The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.

Understanding your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit www.checkmytires.org for additional information.

When your temporary spare tire is installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

To restore the full functionality of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with a TPMS* in this section.

When you believe your system is not operating properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the TPMS must be retrained following every tire rotation. See *Tire rotation* in this chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When inflating your tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How temperature affects your tire pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

TPMS reset procedure

The TPMS reset procedure needs to be performed after each tire rotation on vehicles that require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires.

WARNING: To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

Overview

To provide the vehicle's load carrying capability, some vehicles require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires. The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) equipped on these vehicles is designed to illuminate the low tire pressure warning light at two different pressures; one for the front tires and one for the rear tires.

Since tires need to be rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to know when the tires are rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and which are on the rear. With this information, the system can detect and properly warn of low tire pressures.

TPMS reset tips:

- To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, the TPMS reset procedure should be performed at least three feet (one meter) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the TPMS reset procedure at the same time.
- Do not wait more than two minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will time-out and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels.
- A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

Performing the TPMS reset procedure

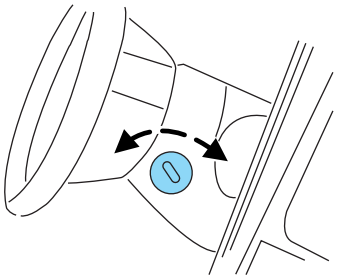
It is recommended that you read the entire procedure before attempting.

1. Drive the vehicle above 20 mph (32 km/h) for at least two minutes and then park in a safe location where you can easily get to all four tires and have access to an air pump.

2. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

3. Cycle the ignition to the on position with the engine off.



4. Turn the hazard flashers on then off three times. This must be accomplished within 10 seconds.

If the reset mode has been entered successfully, the horn will sound once, the TPMS indicator will flash and the message center (if equipped) will display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**. If this does not occur, please try again starting at Step 2.

If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not sound, the TPMS indicator does not flash and the message center (if equipped) does not display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**, seek service from your authorized dealer.

5. Train the TPMS sensors in the tires using the following TPMS reset sequence starting with the **left front tire** in the following clockwise order:

- Left front (Driver's side front tire)
- Right front (Passenger's side front tire)
- Right rear (Passenger's side rear tire)
- Left rear (Driver's side rear tire)

6. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left front tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Note: The single horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been learned by the module for this position. If a double horn is heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful, and must be repeated.

7. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right front tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

8. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right rear tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

9. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left rear tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Training is complete after the horn sounds for the last tire trained (driver's side rear tire), the TPMS indicator stops flashing, and the message center (if equipped) displays:
TRAINING COMPLETE.

10. Turn the ignition off. If two short horn beeps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.

If after repeating the procedure and two short beeps are heard when the ignition is turned to off, seek assistance from your authorized dealer.

11. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Note: The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

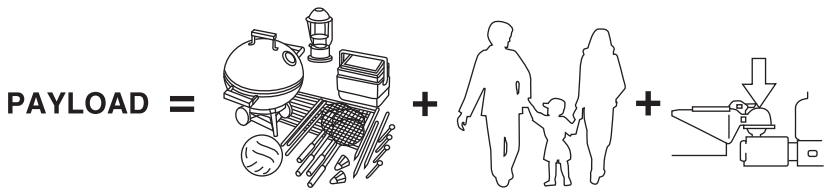
VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

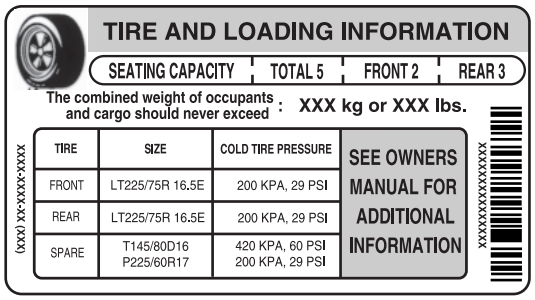


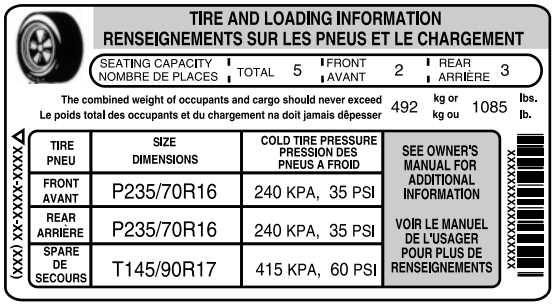
Payload – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Example only:





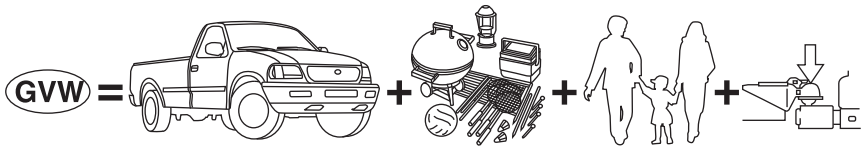
Cargo Weight – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

Note: For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.

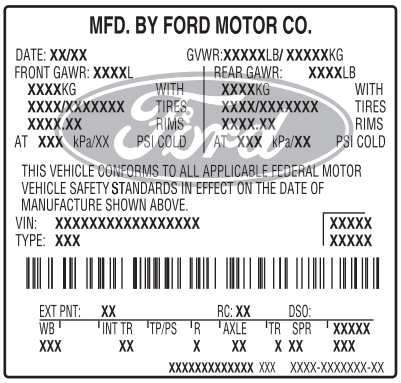


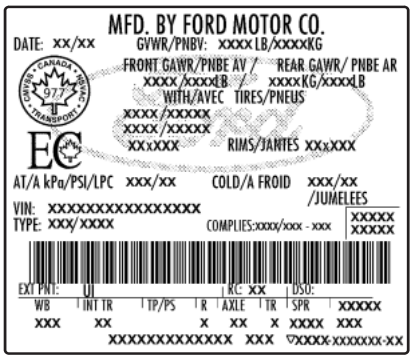
GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- **Example only:**





WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

GCW (Gross Combined Weight) – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Examples: For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635-340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (5 x 99 kg) - (5 x 13.5 kg) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kg.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (12 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

  1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (9 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

Special loading instructions for owners of pick-up trucks and utility-type vehicles

WARNING: For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this owner's guide.

WARNING: Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

TRAILER TOWING

Your vehicle may tow a class I, II or III trailer, provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your engine and rear axle ratio on the following charts.

Do not exceed trailer weight of 5,000 lb (2,268 kg) when towing with bumper only.

Your vehicle's load capacity is designated by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle.

Distribute the load so that only 10–15% of the total is on the tongue. Tie down the load so that it does not shift and change the weight on the hitch.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components carefully after any towing operation.

For load specification terms found on the label, refer to *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* in this chapter. Remember to figure in the tongue load of your loaded vehicle when figuring the total weight.

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)
E-150 Regular/Rec/Crew Van			
4.6L	3.73	11500 (5216)	6000 (2722)
4.6L	4.10	12000 (5443)	6500 (2948)
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	7500 (3402)
E-150 Extended Van			
4.6L	3.73	11500 (5216)	5900 (2676)
4.6L	4.10	12000 (5443)	6400 (2903)
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	7300 (3311)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)
E-150 Regular Wagon (7/8 Passenger)			
4.6L	3.73	11500 (5216)	5600 (2540)
4.6L	4.10	12000 (5443)	6100 (2767)
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	7000 (3175)
E-250 Regular/Rec/Crew Van			
4.6L	3.73	11500 (5216)	6000 (2722)
4.6L	4.10	12000 (5443)	6500 (2948)
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	7400 (3357)
E-250 Extended/Rec/Crew Van			
4.6L	3.73	11500 (5216)	5900 (2540)
4.6L	4.10	12000 (5443)	6400 (2903)
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	7300 (3311)
E-350 Regular/Rec/Crew Van			
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	7400 (3357)
6.8L	3.73	15000 (6804)	9100 (4128)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Extended/Rec/Crew Van			
5.4L	3.73	13000 (5897)	7200 (3266)
6.8L	3.73	15000 (6804)	9000 (4082)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Regular Wagon (11/12 Passenger)			
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5896)	6700 (3039)
6.8L	3.73	15000 (6804)	8500 (3856)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Extended Wagon (11 Passenger)			
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5896)	6500 (2948)
6.8L	3.73	15000 (6804)	8300 (3765)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)
E-350 Extended Wagon (14/15 Passenger)			
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5896)	6300 (2858)
6.8L	3.73	15000 (6804)	8100 (3674)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-250 Cutaway Single Rear Wheel (SRW)			
4.6L	4.10	12000 (5443)	7500 (3402)
E-350 Extended Cutaway Single Rear Wheel (SRW)			
5.4L	4.10	10600 (4808)	5700 (2585)
E-350 Cutaway Single Rear Wheel (SRW) 138” Wheelbase			
5.4L	3.73	9600 (4354)	4700 (2132)
5.4L	4.10	13000 (5896)	8000 (3629)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Cutaway Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) 138” Wheelbase			
5.4L	3.73	10050 (4763)	4900 (2223)
5.4L	4.10	13000 (5897)	7700 (3493)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Cutaway Single Rear Wheel (SRW) 158” Wheelbase			
5.4L	3.73	9600 (4354)	4600 (2087)
5.4L	4.10	13000 (5896)	8000 (3629)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Cutaway Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) 158”/176” Wheelbase			
5.4L	3.73	10050 (4763)	4800 (2177)
5.4L	4.10	13000 (5897)	7700 (3493)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Stripped Chassis Single Rear Wheel (SRW) 138” Wheelbase			
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	8700 (3946)
E-350 Stripped Chassis Single Rear Wheel (SRW) 158” Wheelbase			
5.4L	3.73/4.10	13000 (5897)	8600 (3901)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)	Maximum Trailer Weight - lb (kg)
E-350 Stripped Chassis Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) 138” Wheelbase			
5.4L	4.10	13000 (5897)	8400 (3810)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-350 Stripped Chassis Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) 158”/176” Wheelbase			
5.4L	4.10	13000 (5897)	8300 (3765)
6.8L	4.10	18500 (8391)	10000 (4536)
E-450 Cutaway			
5.4L	4.56	14050 (6373)	8500 (3856)
6.8L	4.56	22000 (9979)	10000 (4536)
E-450 Stripped Chassis			
5.4L	4.56	14050 (6373)	9200 (4173)
6.8L	4.56	22000 (9979)	10000 (4536)

Notes:

- Maximum trailer weight for all cutaway vehicles must be calculated by subtracting the weight of the vehicle (including incomplete vehicle weight and payload which includes second unit body weight, cargo and passengers) from the GCW; otherwise, maximum trailer weight is 10,000 lb (4,536 kg).
- For high altitude operation reduce GCWR by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation.
- To determine the maximum trailer weight designed for your particular vehicle as equipped, follow the instructions in *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* earlier in this chapter.

Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

Hitches

Do not use or install a hitch that clamps onto the vehicle’s bumper or to the axle. An underbody hitch is acceptable if it is installed properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Weight-distributing hitch

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the vehicle (without the trailer) on a level surface.

2. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender, this is H1.

3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle without the weight distributing bars connected.

4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender a second time, this is H2.

5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars so that the height of the front fender is approximately halfway between H1 and H2.

6. Check that the trailer is level. If not level, remove the trailer, adjust the ball height accordingly, and repeat steps 3 – 6.

WARNING: Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

Using a step bumper (if equipped)

The rear bumper is equipped with an integral hitch and only requires a ball with a one inch (25.4 mm) shank diameter. The bumper has a 5,000 lb (2,270 kg) trailer weight and 500 lb (227 kg) tongue weight capacity.

If it is necessary to relocate the trailer hitch ball position, a frame-mounted trailer hitch must be installed.

Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

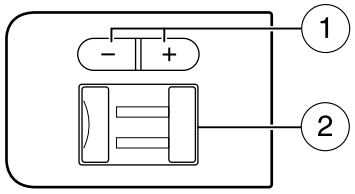
The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

Integrated trailer brake controller (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fully integrated electronic trailer brake controller (TBC). When used properly, the TBC helps ensure smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

WARNING: The Ford TBC has only been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and not hydraulic surge or electric-over-hydraulic types. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

The TBC user interface consists of the following:



1. **+/- (GAIN adjustment buttons):** Pressing these buttons adjusts the TBC's power output to the trailer brakes (in 0.5 increments). The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10.0 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button raises or lowers the setting continuously. The gain setting displays in the message center as follows: TBC GAIN = XX.X.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The trailer brake controller (TBC) is designed to display three items of information in the instrument cluster message center. These are: gain setting, output bar graph, and trailer connectivity status. They appear in the message center as follows:

- **TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER:** The instrument cluster message center displays the current gain setting during a given ignition cycle and when adjusting the gain. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected or when gain adjustments are made with no trailer connected.
- **TBC GAIN = XX.X OUTPUT = //////:** When the vehicle's brake pedal is pushed, or when the manual control is activated, bar indicators illuminate in the instrument cluster message center to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output with six bars indicating maximum output.
- **TRAILER CONNECTED:** This message is displayed when a correct trailer wiring connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.
- **TRAILER DISCONNECTED:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, when a trailer connection was determined and then a disconnection, either intentionally or unintentionally, has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. It is also displayed if a truck or trailer wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected.

2. **Manual control lever:** Slide the control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes (see the following *Procedure for adjusting GAIN* section for instructions on proper use of this feature). If the manual control is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

- **Stop lamps:** Activating the TBC manual control lever illuminates both the trailer brake lamps and the tow vehicle brake lamps except the center high-mount stop lamp (presuming proper trailer electrical connection). Pressing the vehicle brake pedal also illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

Procedure for adjusting GAIN:

The GAIN setting is used to set the TBC for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The GAIN should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while ensuring the trailer wheels do not lock when braking; locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

Note: This should only be performed in a traffic-free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

3. When a trailer with electric brakes is plugged in, the **TRAILER CONNECTED** message displays in the instrument cluster message center.

4. Use the GAIN adjustment (+/-) buttons to increase or decrease the GAIN setting to the desired starting point. A GAIN setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.

5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

6. If the trailer wheels lock up (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

Explanation of instrument cluster warning messages:

The TBC interacts with the instrument cluster message center to display the following messages:

TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT: This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The TBC may still function, but performance may be degraded.

WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER: This message is displayed when a *Short circuit on the electric brake output wire* has occurred. If the **WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER** message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, with no trailer connected, the problem is with the vehicle wiring from the TBC to the 7–pin connector at the bumper. If the message is only displayed with a trailer connected, the problem is related to the trailer wiring; consult your trailer dealer for assistance. This can

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

be a short to ground (i.e., chaffed wire) or a short to voltage (i.e., pulled pin on trailer emergency break-away battery) or trailer brakes drawing too much current.

Note: Your TBC can be diagnosed by your authorized dealer to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred; however, if the fault is with the trailer this diagnosis is **not** covered under your Ford warranty.

Points to Remember:

- Remember to adjust gain setting before using the TBC for the first time.
- Readjust gain setting on the TBC (according to procedure above) whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from those that existed when the gain was initially set.
- The sliding lever on the TBC should be used only for manual activation of trailer brakes to assist with proper adjustment of the GAIN. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer and/or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The TBC does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The TBC is equipped with a feature which reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using the vehicle's brake pedal, not the TBC.
- The TBC interacts with the brake system of the vehicle, including ABS, in order to reduce the likelihood of trailer wheel lock-up; therefore, if these systems are not functioning properly, the TBC may not function at full performance.
- Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other; changing the GAIN setting on the TBC does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether a trailer is attached or not.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the TBC output is disabled and the display is shut down; turning the ignition from off to on awakens the TBC module.
- The TBC is only a factory- or dealer-installed item; Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the TBC due to misuse or customer installation.
- **Do not attempt removal of the TBC without consulting the Workshop Manual; damage to the unit may result.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking-up trailer lamps.

Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing and don't make full-throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Consider turning overdrive off (4–speed transmissions) or using the tow/haul feature (5–speed transmissions) to eliminate excessive shifting and assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached; anticipate stops and brake gradually.

When descending long, steep downhill grades, always use a lower gear to provide engine braking to save wear on brakes. Use D (Overdrive OFF) on moderately steep hills, 2 (Second) on steep hills, and 1 (First) on very steep hills. **Do not apply your brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.**

Trailer towing tips

- Practice turning, stopping and backing-up before starting on a trip to get the feel of the vehicle-trailer combination. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.
- To aid in engine/transmission cooling and A/C efficiency during hot weather while stopped in traffic, place the gearshift lever in P (Park).
- After you have traveled 50 miles (80 km), thoroughly check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lube if not already so equipped. Refer to the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the lubricant specification. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lube used, do not tow a trailer for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full throttle starts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Do not tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) after changing the rear axle lube.
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. If you must park on a grade, place wheel chocks under the trailer's wheels.

Launching or retrieving a boat

Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motor home.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, please refer to *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

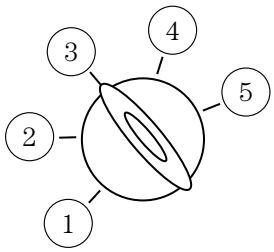
These guidelines are designed to prevent damage to your vehicle.

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

STARTING

Positions of the ignition



1. Accessory — allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

2. Lock — locks the automatic transmission gearshift lever and allows key removal.

3. Off — shuts off the engine and all accessories without locking the steering wheel. **Note:** In order to switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion, shift to neutral and use the brakes to bring the vehicle to a safe stop. After the vehicle has stopped, turn the engine off and shift into park. Then, turn the key to the accessory or off position.

4. On — all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.

5. Start — cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

Note: Do not store the key in the ignition after the vehicle is turned off and you have left the vehicle. This could cause a drain on the battery.

Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

WARNING: Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

WARNING: If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important safety precautions

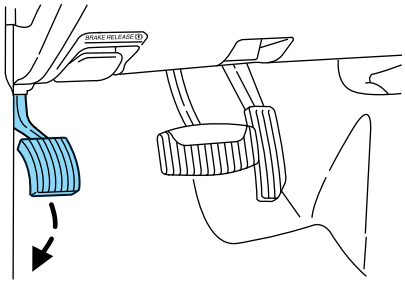
When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from the air induction inlet.

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

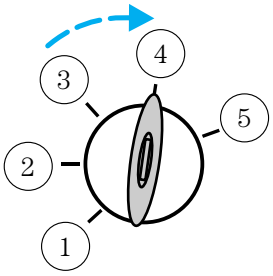
- Make sure the parking brake is set.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).

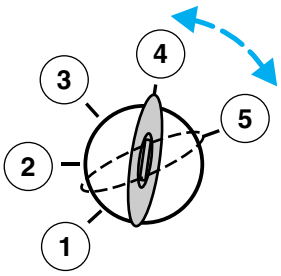
- Turn the key to 4 (on) without turning the key to 5 (start).



Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 4 (on) without turning the key to 5 (start).
2. Turn the key to 5 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine starts. Excessive cranking could damage the starter.



Note: If the engine does not start within five seconds on the first try, turn the key to 3 (off), wait 10 seconds and try again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try again; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Cold weather starting (flexible fuel vehicles only)

The starting characteristics of all grades of E85 ethanol make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0°F (-18°C). Consult your fuel distributor for the availability of winter grade ethanol. As the outside temperature approaches freezing, ethanol fuel distributors should supply winter grade ethanol (same as with unleaded gasoline). If summer grade ethanol is used in cold weather conditions, 0°F to 32°F (-18°C to 0°C), you may experience increased cranking times, rough idle or hesitation until the engine has warmed up.

You may experience a decrease in peak performance when the engine is cold when operating on E85 ethanol.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to off and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Do not use starting fluid such as ether in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you should experience cold weather starting problems on E85 ethanol, and neither an alternative brand of E85 ethanol nor an engine block heater is available, the addition of unleaded gasoline to your tank will improve cold starting performance. Your vehicle is designed to operate on E_{85} ethanol alone, unleaded gasoline alone, or any mixture of the two.

See *Choosing the right fuel* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on ethanol.

Guarding against exhaust fumes

WARNING: If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).

For flexible fuel vehicles, if operating with E85 ethanol, an engine block heater must be used if ambient temperature is below 0°F (-18°C).

See *Cold weather starting* earlier in this chapter for more information on starting with ethanol.

WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

How to use the engine block heater

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of power per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

Using ABS

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal. Do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

ABS warning lamp

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.

Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately by an authorized dealer.

Brake over accelerator

This vehicle is equipped with a brake over accelerator feature. In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, applying steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal will both slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

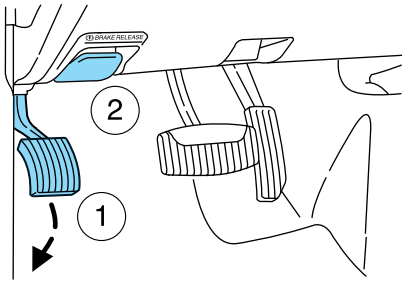
and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, shift to P (Park) and apply the parking brake, and then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Parking brake

To set the parking brake (1), press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.

To release, pull the lever (2).

WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).



The BRAKE warning lamp will illuminate and will remain illuminated until the parking brake is released.

The parking brake is not recommended to stop a moving vehicle. However, if the normal brakes fail, the parking brake can be used to stop your vehicle in an emergency. Since the parking brake applies only the rear brakes, the vehicle's stopping distance will increase greatly and the handling of your vehicle will be adversely affected.

TRACTION CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

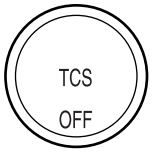
Your vehicle may be equipped with a traction control system (TCS). This system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

During TCS operation, the traction control active light will flash and the engine will not "rev-up" when you press further on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no reason for concern.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a traction control event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road. This may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

The TCS switch, located on the center console, has a TCS OFF light that illuminates steadily in the instrument cluster when the system is off. The TCS will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned off and on. The TCS should normally be left on.



If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the TCS off. This may allow excess wheel spin to "dig" the vehicle out and enable a successful "rocking" maneuver. Remember to switch the TCS back on once the vehicle is no longer stuck.

If a system fault is detected, the traction control active light and the TCS OFF light will illuminate steadily in the instrument cluster, the TCS button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

ADVANCETRAC® WITH ROLL STABILITY CONTROL™ (RSC®) STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system provides the following stability enhancement features for certain driving situations:

- Traction control system (TCS), which functions to help avoid drive-wheel spin and loss of traction.
- Electronic stability control (ESC), which functions to help avoid skids or lateral slides
- Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®), which functions to help avoid a vehicle roll-over.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

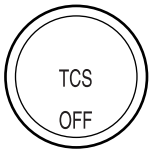
WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle, potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

WARNING: If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, the stability control light and TCS OFF light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is not manually disabled. Press the TCS OFF button located on the center of the instrument panel. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac® with RSC® disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system automatically enables each time the engine is started. All features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system (TCS, ESC, and RSC®) are active and monitor the vehicle from start-up. However, the system will only intervene if the driving situation requires it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system includes a TCS OFF button on the center of the instrument panel, a stability control light and a TCS OFF light in the instrument cluster. The stability control light in the instrument cluster will illuminate temporarily during start-up as part of a normal system self-check, or during driving if a driving situation causes the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to operate. If the stability control light and TCS OFF light illuminate steadily, verify that the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is not manually disabled by pressing the TCS OFF button located on the center stack of the instrument panel. If the stability control light and TCS OFF light remain steadily illuminated, or if the message center (if equipped) displays SERVICE RSC NOW, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

When AdvanceTrac® with RSC® performs a normal system self-check, some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake, and/or a rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off.

When an event occurs that activates AdvanceTrac® with RSC® you may experience the following:

- A slight deceleration of the vehicle
- The stability control light will flash.
- A vibration in the pedal when your foot is on the brake pedal
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.
- The brake pedal may feel stiffer than usual.

Traction control system (TCS)

Traction control is a driver aid feature that helps your vehicle maintain traction of the wheels, typically when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin.

Excessive wheel spin is controlled in two ways, which may work separately or in tandem; engine traction control and brake traction control. Engine traction control works to limit drive-wheel spin by momentarily reducing engine power. Brake traction control works to limit wheel spin by momentarily applying the brakes to the wheel that is slipping. Traction control is most active at low speeds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

During traction control events, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

If the TCS is activated excessively in a short period of time, the braking portion of the system may become temporarily disabled to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, TCS will use only engine power reduction or transfer to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will regain all features. Anti-lock braking, RSC®, and ESC are not affected by this condition and will continue to function during the cool-down period.

The engine traction control and brake traction control system may be deactivated in certain situations. See *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®*.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) may enhance your vehicle's directional stability during adverse maneuvers, for example when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. ESC operates by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power if the system detects that the vehicle is about to skid or slide laterally.

During ESC events, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the ESC system, which include but are not limited to:

- Taking a turn too fast
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle
- Driving over a patch of ice or other slippery surfaces
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa
- Cornering while towing a heavily loaded trailer (refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter).

Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)

Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) may help to maintain roll stability of the vehicle during adverse maneuvers. RSC® operates by detecting the vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes and by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

During an event that activates the RSC®, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the RSC® system, which include:

- Emergency lane-change
- Taking a turn too fast
- Quick maneuvering to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle

Traction control

If the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, and seems to lose engine power, switching off the traction control system may be beneficial because the wheels are allowed to spin. This will restore full engine power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle. To switch off the traction control, press the TCS OFF button below 20 mph (32 km/h). Full features of the traction control system can be restored by pressing the TCS OFF button again or if the vehicle is above 20 mph (32 km/h) or by turning off and restarting the engine.

If you switch off the traction control system below 20 mph (32 km/h), the TCS OFF light will illuminate steadily. Pressing the TCS OFF button again or if the vehicle is above 20 mph (32 km/h) will turn off the TCS OFF light. The switch will not allow partial traction control system disabling above 20 mph (32 km/h).

In R (Reverse), ABS and the engine traction control and brake traction control features will continue to function; however, ESC and RSC® are disabled.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

AdvanceTrac® with RSC® Features				
Button functions	**Stability control light**	**TCS OFF light**	**RSC®/ESC**	**TCS**
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Not illuminated	Illuminated solid	Enabled	Disabled below 20 mph (32 km/h)
Button pressed again after deactivation or driving above 20 mph (32 km/h)	Not illuminated	Not illuminated	Enabled	Enabled

STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (If the fluid level is below the FULL COLD range on the dipstick).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If the noise is excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Heavy or uneven steering efforts may be caused by low power steering pump fluid level. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire.
- uneven tire wear.
- loose or worn suspension components.
- loose or worn steering components.
- improper steering alignment.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

TRACTION-LOK AXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the traction-lok axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

PREPARING TO DRIVE

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Utility vehicles and trucks have larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility vehicles and trucks are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Do not overload your vehicle and use extra precautions, such as driving at slower speeds, avoiding abrupt steering changes and allowing for increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle. Over-loading or loading the vehicle improperly can deteriorate handling capability and contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Vehicle stability and handling

The risk of a rollover crash increases as the number of people and load in the vehicle increase. This increased risk occurs because the passenger weight and load raises the vehicle's center of gravity and causes it to shift rearward. As a result, the van has less resistance to rollover and handles differently from other commonly driven passenger vehicles, making it more difficult to control in an emergency situation. Placing any load on the roof also raises the center of gravity and increases the potential for rollover.

The van should be operated by an experienced driver. An organization that owns a 15–passenger van should select one or two experienced drivers to drive the van on a regular basis. These drivers will gain valuable experience handling the van. This experience will help make each trip safer.

The van should be operated at a safe speed which, in some conditions, may be less than the posted speed limit.

Further, all occupants should be properly restrained. Most people killed in rollover crashes were unbelted. Occupants can dramatically reduce their risk of being killed or seriously injured in a rollover crash by simply using their seat belts. Organizations that own 15–passenger vans should have a written seat belt use policy. Drivers should be responsible for enforcing the policy.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Emergency maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

BRAKE-SHIFT INTERLOCK

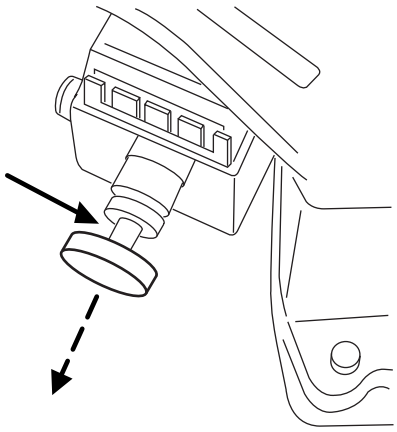
The vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) unless the brake pedal is pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from P (Park):

1. Apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Use a screwdriver to remove the lower trim panel under the steering column. Make sure to not disturb the wires on the electrical connector.
3. Locate the brake-shift interlock solenoid underneath the steering column.
4. Pull back on the solenoid, and at the same time, shift the transmission into N (Neutral).
5. Start the vehicle.



See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

Understanding the gearshift positions of the 4–speed automatic transmission

Your vehicle has been designed to improve fuel economy by reducing fuel usage during coasting or deceleration. When you take your foot off the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to slow down the torque converter clutch locks up and aggressively shuts off fuel flow to the engine while decelerating. This fuel economy benefit may be perceived as a light to medium braking sensation when removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

1. Start the engine
2. Press the brake pedal
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

1. Come to a complete stop
2. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the lock position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

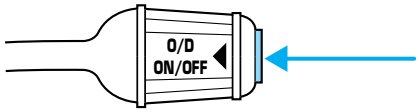
N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

D (Overdrive)

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through four.

Overdrive can be deactivated by pressing the transmission control switch on the end of the gearshift lever.



The O/D OFF lamp will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

O/D
OFF

Drive (not shown)

Drive is activated when the transmission control switch is pressed.

- This position allows for all forward gears except overdrive.
- O/D OFF lamp is illuminated.
- Provides engine braking.
- Use when driving conditions cause excessive shifting from O/D to other gears. Examples: hilly terrain, heavy loads, trailer towing and when engine braking is required.
- To return to O/D (Overdrive), press the transmission control switch. The O/D OFF lamp will not be illuminated.
- O/D (Overdrive) is automatically returned each time the key is turned off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

2 (Second)

This position allows for second gear only.

- Provides engine braking.
- Use to start-up on slippery roads.
- To return to D (Overdrive), move the gearshift lever into the D (Overdrive) position.
- Selecting 2 (Second) at higher speeds will cause the transmission to downshift to second gear at the appropriate vehicle speed.

1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; allows for 1 (First) when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or Drive.
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

Understanding the shift positions of the 5–speed automatic transmission (if equipped - 5.4L and 6.8L gasoline engines only)

P R N D 3 2 1

Your vehicle has been designed to improve fuel economy by reducing fuel usage during coasting or deceleration. When you take your foot off the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to slow down, the torque converter clutch locks up and aggressively shuts off fuel flow to the engine while decelerating. This fuel economy benefit may be perceived as a light to medium braking sensation when removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

1. Start the engine
2. Press the brake pedal
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

1. Come to a complete stop
2. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

WARNING: Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the lock position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul off

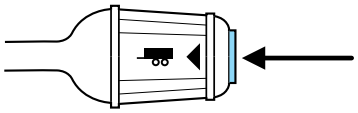
D (Overdrive) with tow/haul off is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul on

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

To activate tow/haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

Tow/haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is depressed.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL light will no longer be illuminated.

When you shut-off and restart the engine, the transmission will automatically return to normal D (Overdrive) mode (Tow/Haul OFF).

WARNING: Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

3 (Third)

Transmission starts and operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or Drive.
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The reverse sensing system (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

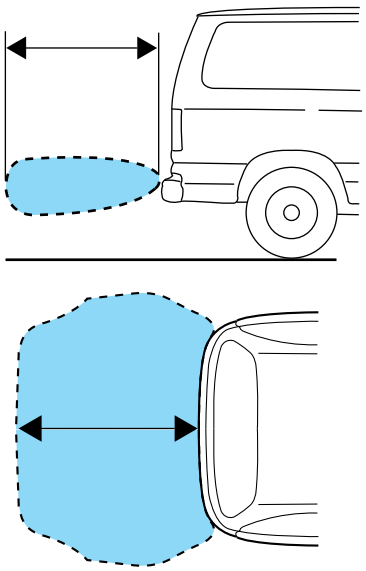
WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.

WARNING: This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The RSS detects obstacles up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.



While receiving a warning, on some radios, the volume will be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous value.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

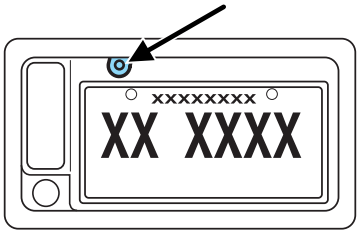
Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.

If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

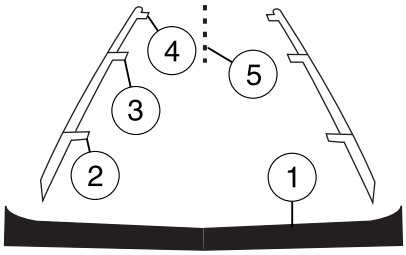
REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The rearview camera system located on the back door provides a video image, which appears in the rearview mirror or navigation screen (if equipped), of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle.



To use the camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse); an image will display on the left portion of the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped). The area displayed on the screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

- (1) Rear bumper
- (2) Red zone
- (3) Yellow zone
- (4) Green zone
- (5) Centerline of vehicle



Always use caution while backing.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Image delay if displayed through the rearview mirror:

When shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any other gear, the image in the rearview mirror will remain on for a few seconds before it shuts off to assist in parking or trailer hookup.

Image delay if displayed through the navigation screen:

After shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image in the navigation screen will remain until the vehicle speed reaches five mph (8 km/h), only if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any navigation radio button is pressed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Note: The default setting for the rear camera delay is off. Press the "Settings" button found on the navigation screen (if equipped) to set the rear camera delay feature to on or off.

When towing, the camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle; this might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.

The camera lens for the camera is located on the back door. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

Note: If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.

WARNING: The camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rearview mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Backup as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

WARNING: Do not use the camera system with the backdoor open.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rear video system checked for proper coverage and operation.

Night time and dark area use

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

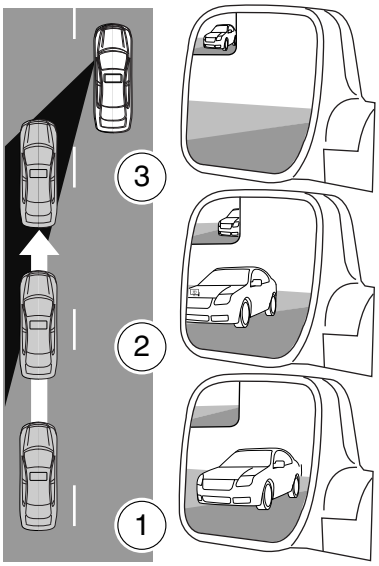
Servicing

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
- If the image is not clear, then check if there is anything covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.

BLIND SPOT MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex spotter mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the outside mirrors. They are designed to assist the driver by increasing visibility along the side of the vehicle. For more information on your side view mirrors, refer to *Exterior mirrors* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

Driving with blind spot mirrors



Before a lane change, check the main mirror first, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.

When the approaching vehicle is at a distance, its image is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror. As the vehicle approaches, the image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror (1). As the vehicle approaches its image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror (2). As the vehicle leaves the blind spot mirror it will transition to the driver's peripheral field of view (3).

WARNING: Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

VEHICLE USED AS A STATIONARY POWER SOURCE

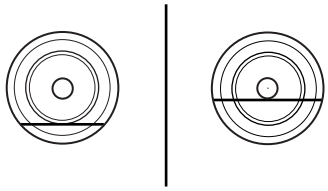
Auxiliary equipment called power take-off or PTO, is often added to the engine or transmission to operate utility equipment. Examples include a wheel-lift for tow trucks, cranes, tools for construction or tire service and pumping fluids. PTO applications draw auxiliary horsepower from the powertrain, often while the vehicle is stationary. In this condition, there is limited cooling air flow through the radiator and around the vehicle that normally occurs when a vehicle is moving. The aftermarket PTO system installer, having the most knowledge of the final application, is responsible for determining whether additional chassis heat protection or powertrain cooling is required, and alerting the user to the safe and proper operation.

Your vehicle is qualified for use as a stationary power source, within limits detailed in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book,* found at www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas, and through the Ford Truck Body Builders Advisory Service.

Gas engine vehicles are qualified for up to 10 minutes of continuous operation as a stationary power source, due to the potential for the normal venting of fuel vapors. Further consult your aftermarket PTO installer, since the duration of operation limit for the aftermarket PTO may be less than the vehicle is capable of.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Roadside Emergencies

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to $200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the Owner's Guide portfolio in the glove compartment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles sold in Canada : Getting roadside assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1–800–665–2006.

Vehicles sold in Canada : Using roadside assistance

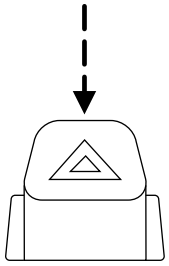
Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please refer to your Warranty Guide or visit our website at www.ford.ca for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.



- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Note: With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF (EXCEPT STRIPPED CHASSIS)

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision due to this feature, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the off position.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the on position.

In some instances the vehicle may not restart the first time you try to restart and may take one additional attempt.

WARNING: Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH (STRIPPED CHASSIS VEHICLES ONLY)

This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

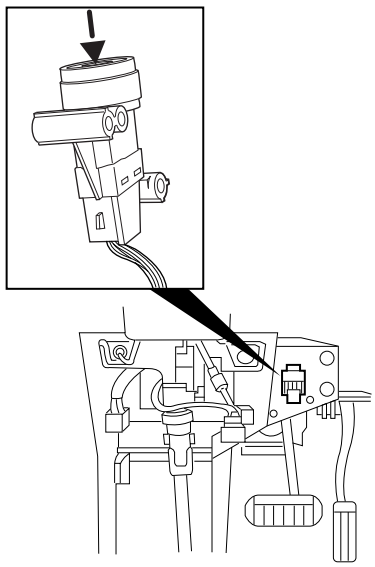
After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The switch is located on a bracket above the brake pedal.

To reset the switch:

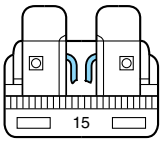
1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition on.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to off.
6. Make another check for leaks.



FUSES AND RELAYS

Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



Note: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	**Mini fuses**	**Standard fuses**	**Maxi fuses**	**Cartridge maxi fuses**	**Fuse link cartridge**
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

Passenger compartment fuse panel

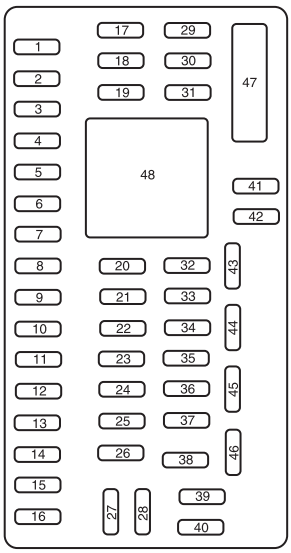
The fuse panel is located to the left of the brake pedal and mounted onto the lower left cowl panel. Remove the fuse panel cover to access the fuses.

WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

If your vehicle is equipped with a dual battery, disconnecting the primary under-hood battery DOES NOT remove power from all circuits.

To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the inside of the fuse panel cover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	30A	Not used (spare)
2	15A	Not used (spare)
3	15A	Not used (spare)
4	30A	Not used (spare)
5	10A	Passenger compartment fuse panel (SPDJB)/Brake-shift interlock
6	20A	Turn signal, Hazard, Stop lamps
7	10A	Left low beam
8	10A	Right low beam
9	15A	Courtesy lamps
10	15A	Switch illumination
11	10A	Not used (spare)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
12	7.5A	Not used (spare)
13	5A	Mirrors
14	10A	SYNC®, GPS module
15	10A	Not used (spare)
16	15A	Not used (spare)
17	20A	Door locks
18	20A	Not used (spare)
19	25A	Not used (spare)
20	15A	Diagnostic connector (except stripped chassis)
21	15A	Not used (spare)
22	15A	Park lamps, License plate lamps
23	15A	High beams
24	20A	Horn (except stripped chassis)
25	10A	Demand lighting
26	10A	Cluster (except stripped chassis)
27	20A	Ignition switch feed
28	5A	Audio mute (start)
29	5A	Cluster (except stripped chassis)
30	5A	Not used (spare)
31	10A	Not used (spare)
32	10A	Restraints module
33	10A	Trailer brake controller
34	5A	Not used (spare)
35	10A	Reverse park aid, Rear video camera, Cutaway run/start
36	5A	Passive anti-theft system (PATS) RF module
37	10A	Climate control, Stripped chassis IP #1 run/start
38	20A	Not used (spare)
39	20A	Radio, Navigation

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
40	20A	Amplifier
41	15A	Radio, Switch illumination, Reverse camera mirror, Automatic dimming rear view mirror
42	10A	Upfitter switch
43	10A	Stripped chassis IP connector #1
44	10A	Trailer tow battery charge relay
45	5A	Wipers, Stripped chassis Engine connector 3
46	7.5A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator (PADI)
47	30A circuit breaker	Windows accessory delay
48	Relay	Delayed accessory

Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

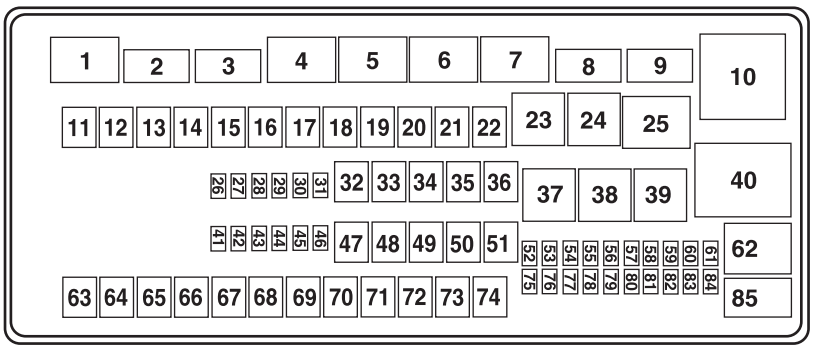
WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If your vehicle is equipped with a dual battery, disconnecting the primary under-hood battery DOES NOT remove power from all circuits.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



The high-current fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	HC Micro Relay	Powertrain control module (PCM)
2	HC Micro Relay	Starter solenoid
3	HC Micro Relay	Wiper
4	HC Micro Relay	Trailer tow battery charge
5	HC Micro Relay	Fuel pump
6	HC Micro Relay	Trailer tow park lamp
7	HC Micro Relay	Upfitter #4
8	HC Micro Relay	Upfitter #3
9	HC Micro Relay	Modified vehicle and stripped chassis run/start
10	—	Not used
11	—	Not used
12	40A**	Modified vehicle and stripped chassis run/start
13	30A**	Starter solenoid relay
14	40A**	Run start relay
15	40A**	Modified vehicle and stripped chassis battery
16	50A**	Auxiliary A/C blower

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
17	50A**	Trailer tow battery charge, Trailer tow park feed
18	30A**	Electric trailer brake, Trailer brake controller
19	30A**	Upfitter #1
20	30A**	Upfitter #2
21	—	Not used
22	—	Not used
23	G8VA relay	A/C clutch
24	G8VA relay	Horn relay (stripped chassis)
25	HC Micro relay	Run/start
26	—	Not used
27	—	Not used
28	20A*	Back up lamp
29	10A*	A/C clutch
30	10A*	Brake on/off (BOO) switch
31	10A*	Cluster battery (stripped chassis)
32	50A**	Blower motor
33	40A**	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) pump
34	20A**	Stripped chassis horn
35	40A**	PCM relay
36	20A**	Ignition switch (stripped chassis)
37	G8VA relay	Trailer tow stop — left turn signal
38	G8VA relay	Trailer tow stop — right turn signal
39	G8VA relay	Back up lamp
40	ISO relay	Blower motor
41	—	Not used
42	15A*	Diagnostic connector (stripped chassis)
43	20A*	Fuel pump

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
44	10A*	Upfitter #3
45	15A*	Upfitter #4
46	10A*	PCM keep alive power, Canister vent, PCM relay coil
47	40A**	ABS coil
48	20A**	Trailer tow stop lamp/turn signal
49	30A**	Wiper motor
50	—	Not used
51	20A**	Cutaway
52	10A*	Stripped chassis and modified vehicle run/start relay coil
53	10A*	ABS run/start feed
54	10A*	Fuel pump relay coil
55	—	Not used
56	—	Not used
57	20A*	Trailer tow park lamp
58	15A*	Trailer tow backup lamp
59	—	Not used
60	—	One touch integrated start (OTIS) (diode)
61	—	Not used
62	HC Micro relay	Upfitter #2
63	30A**	Trailer tow battery charge
64	—	Not used
65	20A**	Power point 2 (glove box)
66	20A**	Power point 3 (left-hand B-pillar)
67	20A**	Power point 1 (instrument panel)
68	50A**	Modified vehicle
69	—	Not used
70	30A**	Stripped chassis
71	—	Not used

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
72	20A**	Cigar lighter
73	—	Not used
74	30A**	Power seat
75	20A*	Vehicle power (VPWR) 1, PCM power
76	20A*	VPWR 2, PCM – emission related powertrain components
77	10A*	VPWR 3, PCM – general powertrain components
78	15A*	VPWR 4, Fuel pump relay coil
79	10A*	VPWR 5, Transmission
80	10A*	Cluster run/start (stripped chassis)
81	—	Not used
82	—	Not used
83	—	Fuel pump (diode)
84	—	Not used
85	HC Micro relay	Upfitter #1
* Mini fuses ** A1S fuses		

CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.

WARNING: Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable)

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

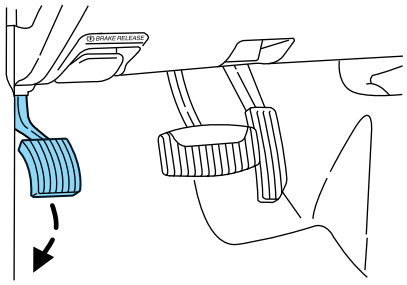
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Full-size matching spare tire/wheel information

This spare tire/wheel will match the road tire/wheel. When driving with the full size matching spare tire/wheel, do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h). It is intended for temporary use only. This means if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible.

Stopping and securing your vehicle

1. Park on a level surface.
2. Activate the warning flashers.
3. Place the gearshift in P (Park).
4. Apply the parking brake and turn the engine off.

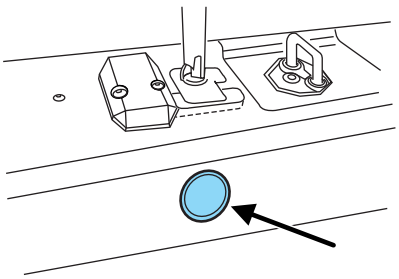


Spare tire information

The spare tire for your vehicle is stowed under the rear of your vehicle (except cutaway and stripped chassis models).

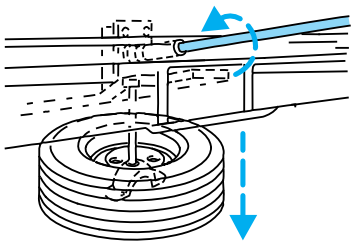
To remove the spare tire:

1. Open the rear doors and remove the thumb screw and anti-theft bracket. If finger pressure will not remove the thumb screw, use the lug wrench to loosen the screw.
2. Remove the access plug under the left door.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

3. Remove the jack handle from the right side compartment and insert the tip of the jack handle through the access hole and into the tube.



4. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise until the cable is slack and the tire can be slid from under the vehicle.

5. Remove the retainer from the spare tire.

To stow the cable retainer with the spare removed, turn the jack handle clockwise until all slack is removed.

Tire change procedure

WARNING: To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

WARNING: If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

Note: Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

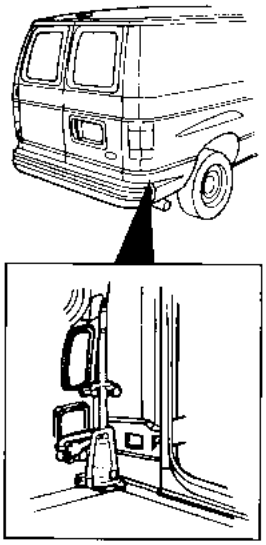
1. Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the tire you are changing.

On E-450 vehicles, the parking brake is on the transmission. Therefore, the vehicle will not be prevented from moving when a rear wheel is lifted, even if the parking brake is applied. Be sure to block both directions of the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel that is being lifted.

2. Remove the spare tire and jack from the storage location.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- The jack is located in the rear right-hand side of the cargo area.



3. Remove any wheel trim. Insert the tapered end of the lug nut wrench behind wheel covers or hubcaps and twist off.

4. Loosen the wheel nut by pulling up on the handle of the lug nut wrench about one-half turn (counterclockwise). Do not remove the wheel lug nuts until you raise the tire off the ground.

WARNING: When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park).

Replacing the tire

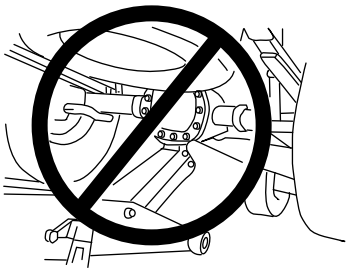
1. Assemble the jack handle sections together and lock into the jack. Use the jack handle to slide the jack under the vehicle.

WARNING: To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.

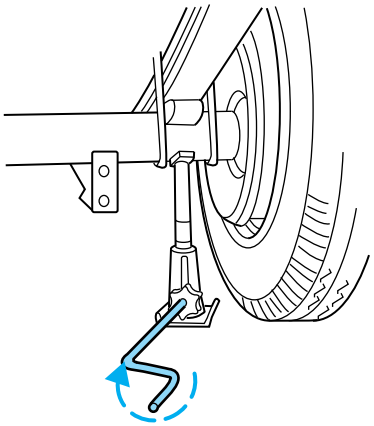
2. Position the jack to raise the front or rear wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

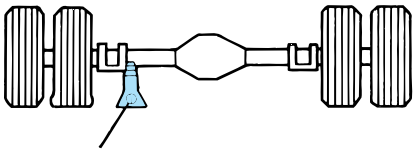
- **Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.**



Rear axle jacking points - All models except E-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) and E-450:



Rear axle jacking points - E-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) and E-450:

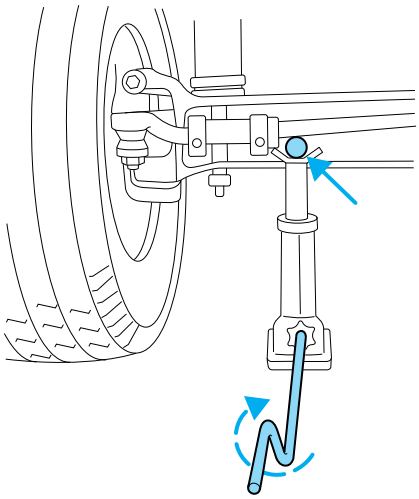


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Front axle jacking points:

Place the jack under the **pin** on the front surface of the front axle.

Do not place the jack under or on the steering linkage.



3. Raise the jack until the wheel is completely off the ground. (Turn jack handle clockwise if your vehicle is equipped with a screw-type jack or pump the jack if equipped with a hydraulic jack.)

4. Remove the lug nuts with the lug nut wrench.

5. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire.

If your vehicle has single rear wheels, thread the lug nuts on the studs with the beveled face toward the wheel.

If your vehicle has dual rear wheels, thread the two element swiveling lug nuts on the studs with the flange facing toward the wheel.

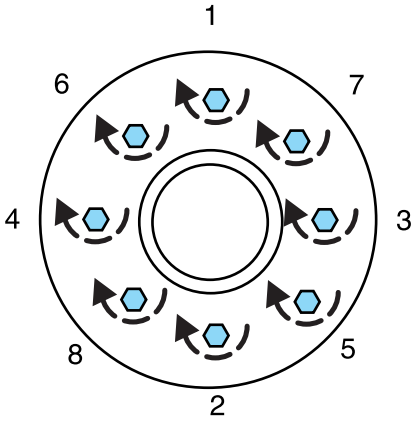
6. Use the lug nut wrench to screw the lug nut snugly against the wheel.

7. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

8. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the following pattern (Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification):

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Never use wheels or lug nuts different than the original equipment as this could damage the wheel or mounting system. This damage could allow the wheels to come off while the vehicle is being driven.



9. Install any wheel covers, ornaments or hub caps. Make sure they are snapped in place.

10. Stow the jack, handle and lug wrench.

11. Unblock the wheels.

Stowing the flat/spare tire

Note: Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing in the direction specified on the Tire Changing Instructions located with the jack hardware.

2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.

3. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.

4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.

5. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, as per your *scheduled maintenance information),* or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

6. If removed, install the spare tire lock (if equipped) into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key (if equipped) and jack handle.

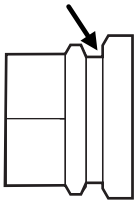
WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size and wheel lug nut type	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	ft-lb	N•m
9/16 x 18 conical lug nut	150	200
9/16 x 18 two-piece lug nut	140	190
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

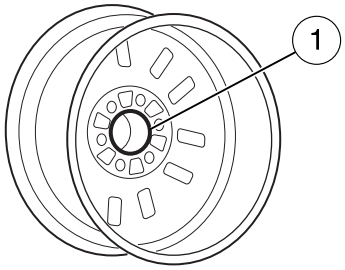
On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut. Do not apply motor oil to the wheel nut threads or the wheel stud threads.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Note: Inspect the wheel pilot hole (1) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.



JUMP STARTING

WARNING: The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

WARNING: Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12–volt supply to start your vehicle.**

2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.

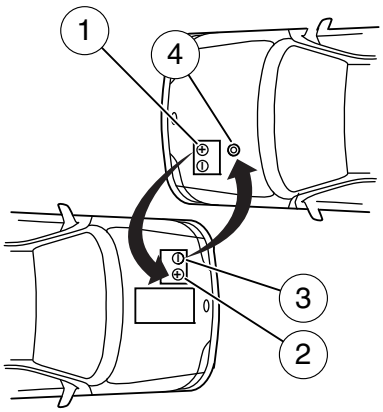
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

Connecting the jumper cables

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.



Note: Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.

WARNING: Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

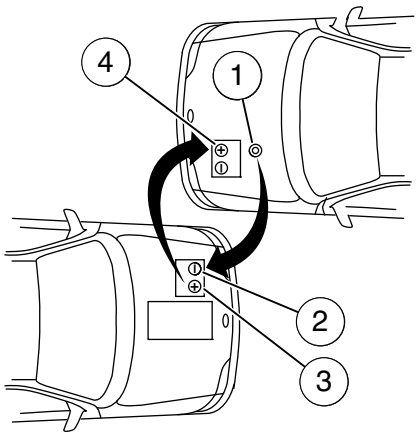
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Removing the jumper cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

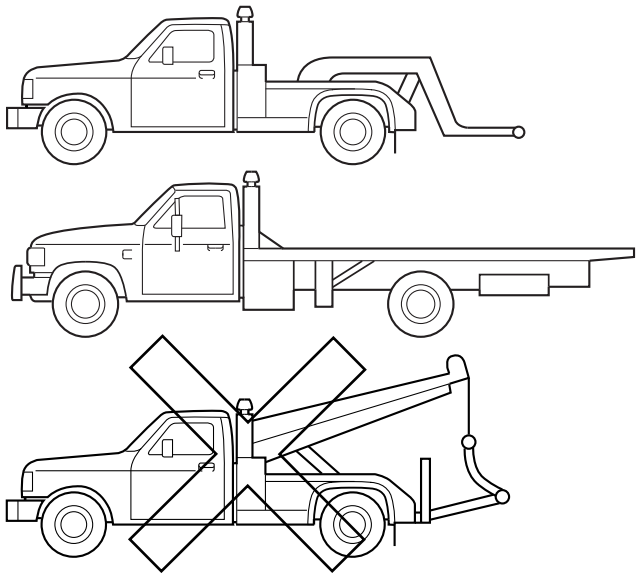
1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.



After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Ford recommends your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

If your vehicle is equipped with an air dam and must be towed from the front, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed by wheel lift or flatbed equipment to prevent damage to the air dam.

If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Roadside Emergencies

Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing Address
Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

Telephone
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952

Online
Additional information and resources are available online at www.fordowner.com

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Customer Assistance

In Canada:

Mailing Address (Ford vehicles)
Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

Telephone
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Online
www.ford.ca

Mailing Address (Lincoln vehicles)
Lincoln Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

Telephone
1-800-387-9333

Online
www.lincolncanada.com

Away from home–motorhome service

If you own a motorhome built on a Ford Chassis and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the authorized dealer could provide, after following the steps above, contact the Ford Motorhome Customer Assistance Center to find an authorized dealer or service location to help you. In the United States and Canada:
Ford Motorhome Customer Assistance Center
900 N. Lake Havasu Avenue
Lake Havasu City, AZ 86403
1-800-444-3311
Open 365/24/7

In order to help service your motorhome vehicle, please have the following information available when contacting the Motorhome Customer Assistance Center:

- telephone number where you can be reached
- vehicle location (city and state)
- year and make of your vehicle
- date of vehicle purchase

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- current odometer reading
- vehicle identification number (VIN)

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR

3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the *Getting the services you need* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800
Arlington, Virginia 22203–1833

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford International Business Development Inc.
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 11957
Caparra Heights Station
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 21470
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: +971 4 3326084
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409
Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575
FAX: +971 4 3327266
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Customer Assistance

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing expcac@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
P.O. Box 07150
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website: www.helminc.com.

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1–800–333–0510, or online at: https://wwwapps.tc.gc.ca/Saf-Sec-Sur/7/PCDB-BDPP/Index.aspx.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Cleaning

WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with the sliding door electrical contact switches. Paint sealant or other contaminants could interfere with the proper operation of the power locks or radio speakers. If necessary, clean the contacts with Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42) to remove any sealant. Do not use any abrasives on the contact surfaces.

PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver’s door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover , available from your authorized dealer.

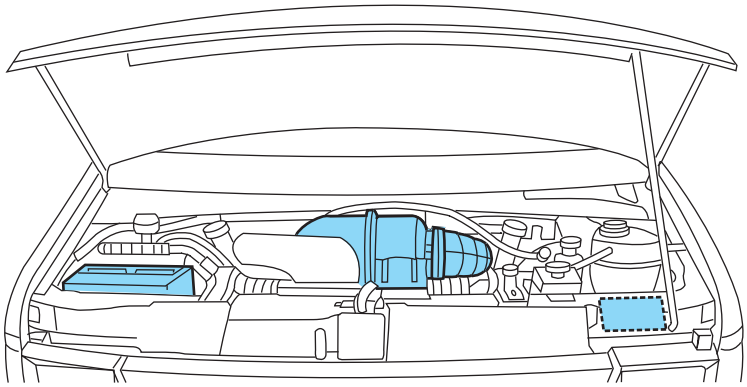
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Cleaning

ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (CXC-66-A).
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.

PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A) in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid [CXC-37-(A, B, D, or F)] in Canada, available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Cleaning

- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, **wipe off immediately.** Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.

2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.

3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area–allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and safety belts:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.
- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.

UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Cleaning

FORD AND LINCOLN CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada only) [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)]

Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)

Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the engine off

1. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

Working with the engine on

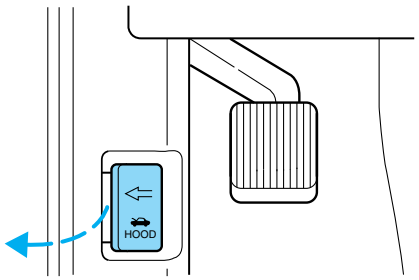
WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.

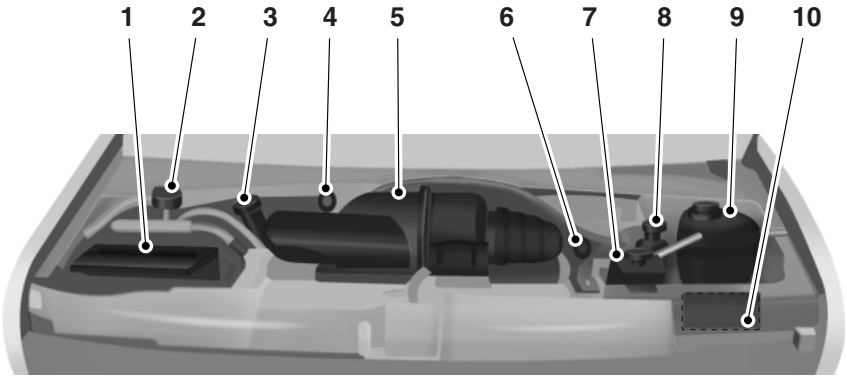


2. Go to the front of the vehicle and push the auxiliary latch, located in the center top of the grille, to the left to release the hood.

3. Lift the hood and secure it with the prop rod.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT



1. Battery
2. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
5. Air filter assembly
6. Engine oil dipstick
7. Power steering fluid reservoir
8. Brake fluid reservoir
9. Engine coolant reservoir
10. Power distribution box

WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive.

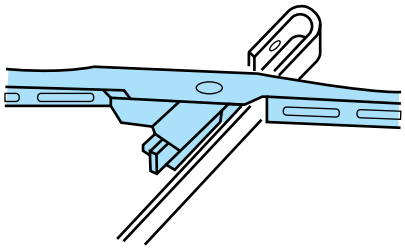
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Turn the blade at an angle from the wiper arm. Press the lock tab to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.



2. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

ENGINE OIL

Checking the engine oil

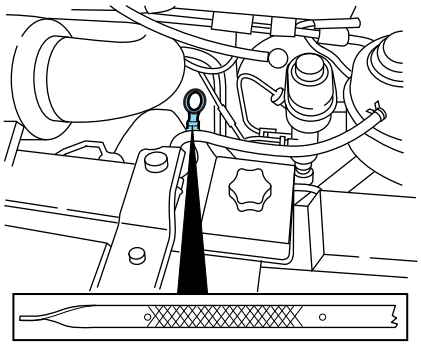
Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.

5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level dipstick.



6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.

- If the oil level is **between the lower and upper holes or between the MIN and MAX marks (depending on application),** the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
- If the oil level is below the lower hole or the MIN mark, add enough oil to raise the level within the lower and upper holes or within the MIN-MAX range.
- Oil levels above the upper hole or the MAX mark may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.

7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.

2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.

4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.

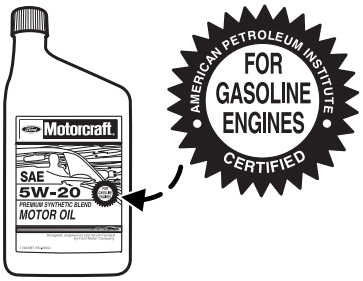
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until three clicks are heard or until the cap is fully seated.

To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.



Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine's warranty, use Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C945-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle's engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information.*

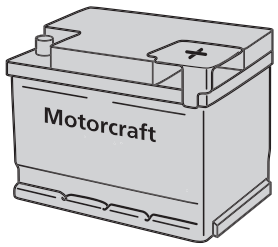
Ford production and Motorcraft® replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft® oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



WARNING: This vehicle may be equipped with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect the vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must learn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling**.

For information on transmission operation after the battery has been disconnected, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

Dual battery (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a frame-mounted battery located on the passenger side frame rail, behind the front passenger door. This battery is connected in parallel with the battery in the engine compartment. Both batteries are used to start the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. Flexible fuel vehicles (FFV) must also relearn the ethanol content of the fuel for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.

2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.

3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.

4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

6. Release the parking brake. With your foot on the brake pedal and with the A/C on, put the vehicle in D (Drive) and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

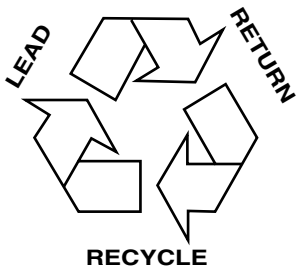
7. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy along with the ethanol content for flexible fuel vehicles.
- **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**
- For flexible fuel vehicles, if you are operating on E85, you may experience poor starts or an inability to start the engine and driveability problems until the fuel trim and ethanol content have been relearned.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



ENGINE COOLANT

Checking engine coolant

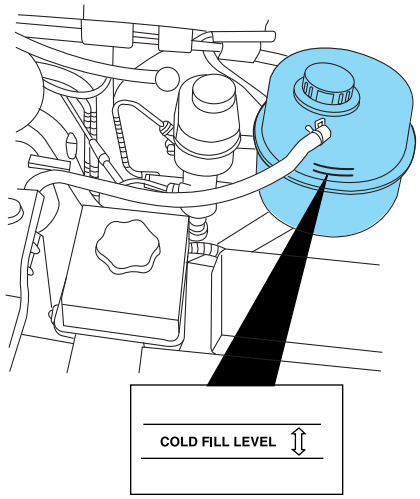
The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information.* The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water. For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240E available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration. The level of coolant should be maintained at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Improved freeze protection.**
- **Improved boiling protection.**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the FULL COLD level, or within the COLD FILL or MIN / MAX range as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool,** until the appropriate fill level is obtained. If coolant is filled to the COLD FILL RANGE or FULL COLD level when the engine is not cool, the system will remain underfilled.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

WARNING: Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **DO NOT MIX** different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and distilled water to the FULL COLD level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.

2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.

3. Step back while the pressure releases.

4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.

5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the COLD FILL RANGE or the FULL COLD level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.

6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50, drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined previously in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **If available, refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **If available, refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

What you should know about fail-safe cooling (if equipped)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The "fail-safe" distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

WARNING: If fail-safe cooling activates, pull off the road as soon as safely possible, and turn the engine off, because the engine may automatically shut off while driving without further indication.

How fail-safe cooling works

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The service engine soon indicator light will illuminate.
- The engine coolant temperature indicator light will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

When fail-safe mode is activated

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate the vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring the vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, the vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

WARNING: Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

Important safety precautions

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

WARNING: If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

WARNING: Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before fueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before fueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuels such as gasoline and ethanol are highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline and/or ethanol vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.
- FFV fuel tanks may contain zero to 85% ethanol. Any fuel blends containing gasoline and ethanol should be treated the same as "Fuel Ethanol." To identify if your vehicle is an FFV, it may be equipped with a yellow fuel cap with the text "E85/Gasoline", or check if there is a label on the fuel filler door.

Pure ethanol is the alcohol which is the intoxicating agent in liquor, beer and wine. It is distilled from the fermentation of plants such as field corn and sugar cane. When ethanol is produced for use in motor fuels, a small amount of gasoline is added to make it unfit for beverage use. The resulting ethanol blend is called denatured fuel ethanol meaning that it is denatured with 2% to 5% gasoline and is suitable for automotive use.

During the summer season, fuel ethanol may contain a maximum of 85% denatured ethanol (Ed85) and 15% unleaded gasoline. The fuel ethanol has a higher octane rating than unleaded regular or premium gasoline and this allows the design of engines with greater efficiency and power.

Winter blends may contain up to 75% denatured ethanol (Ed75) and up to 25% unleaded gasoline to enhance cold engine starts. Severely cold weather may require additional measures for reliable starting. Refer to *Starting* in the *Driving* chapter.

Ethanol is more chemically active than gasoline. It corrodes some metals and causes some plastic and rubber components to swell, break down or become brittle and crack, especially when mixed with gasoline. Special materials and procedures have been developed for flexible fuel vehicles and the dispensers used by ethanol fuel providers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

WARNING: Flexible fuel components and standard unleaded gasoline fuel components are not interchangeable. If your vehicle is not serviced in accordance with flexible fuel vehicles procedures, damage may occur and your warranty may be invalidated.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

Refueling

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
- Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Fuel filler cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it clicks at least once.

If the check fuel cap light or a "check fuel cap" message comes on, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. The light or message can come on after several driving events after you've refueled your vehicle.

At the next opportunity, safely pull off of the road, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it. The check fuel cap light or "check fuel cap" message may not reset immediately; it may take several driving cycles for the check fuel cap light or "check fuel cap" message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city and highway driving.

Continuing to drive with the check fuel cap light or "check fuel cap" message on may cause the light to turn on as well.

If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford, Motorcraft or other certified fuel filler cap is not used.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

WARNING: If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in personal injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

FFV (Flex Fuel Vehicle) fuel cap

If your vehicle is FFV capable, it will have a yellow colored fuel cap.

Choosing the right fuel

If your vehicle is a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), use only UNLEADED FUEL and FUEL ETHANOL (Ed75–Ed85).

If your vehicle is not a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), then only use UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel.

The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

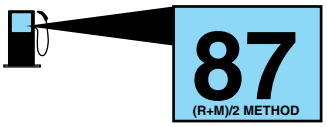
Note: Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated “cleaner-burning” gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

Octane recommendations

“Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.



Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

FFV engine (if equipped)

If your vehicle is flex fuel capable, it is designed to use Fuel Ethanol (Ed75–Ed85), “Regular” unleaded gasoline or any mixture of the two fuels.

Use of other fuels such as Fuel Methanol may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and your warranty may be invalidated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85. If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible—at least half a tank. Do not add less than five gallons (18.9L) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least 5 miles (8 km) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

If you exclusively use E85 fuel, it is recommended to fill the fuel tank with regular unleaded gasoline at each scheduled oil change.

Fuel quality

Unleaded gasoline engines

If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of "Regular" unleaded gasoline.

FFV engines

If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of E85 fuel. If the driveability problems continue, fill the vehicle with regular unleaded gasoline and drive vehicle normally until gasoline is used. See your authorized dealer if the problem persists.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

   Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

   Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

Habits

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

Maintenance

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information.*

Conditions

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNING: Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.

4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

POWER STEERING FLUID

Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature.

2. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.

3. Turn the engine off.

4. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX lines. Do not add fluid if the level is in this range.

WARNING: For E-350 and E-450 vehicles with the Hydro-Boost Brake System, do not press the brake pedal after the engine has been turned off. Pressing the brake pedal after the engine has been turned off will give a false power steering fluid level reading.

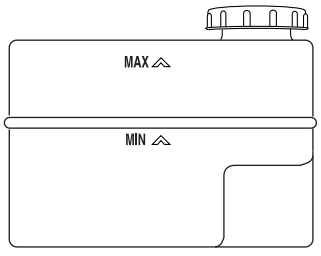
5. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the range between the MIN and MAX lines. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type.

Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (if the fluid level is below the MIN line).

Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX line, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

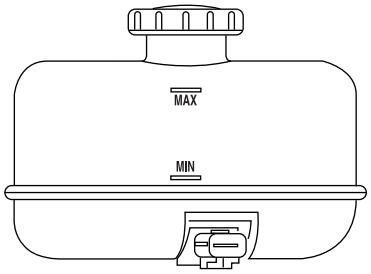
BRAKE FLUID

- E-150/E-250/E-350 Single Rear Wheel



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

- E-350/E-450 Dual Rear Wheel



The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

DRIVELINE UNIVERSAL JOINT AND SLIP YOKE

Your vehicle may be equipped with universal joints that require lubrication. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for maintenance intervals. If the original universal joints are replaced with universal joints equipped with grease fittings, lubrication will also be necessary.

TRANSMISSION FLUID

Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.

2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

3. With the engine running, parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.

4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.

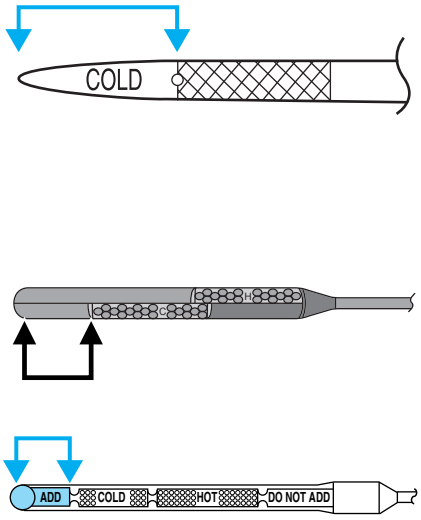
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.

6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.

7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

Low fluid level

Do not drive the vehicle if there is no indication of fluid on the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

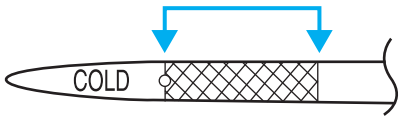


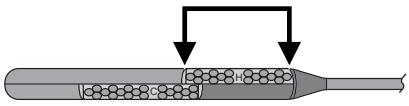
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

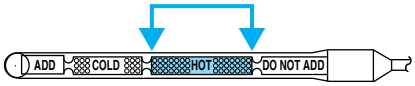
Correct fluid level

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

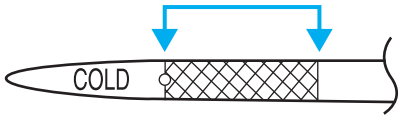
You can check the fluid without driving if the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C). However, if fluid is added at this time, an overfill condition could result when the vehicle reaches normal operating temperature.



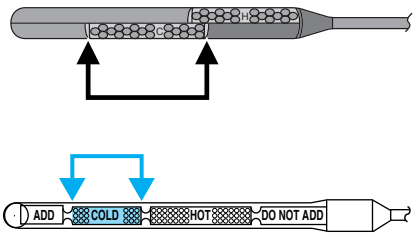




The transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]).

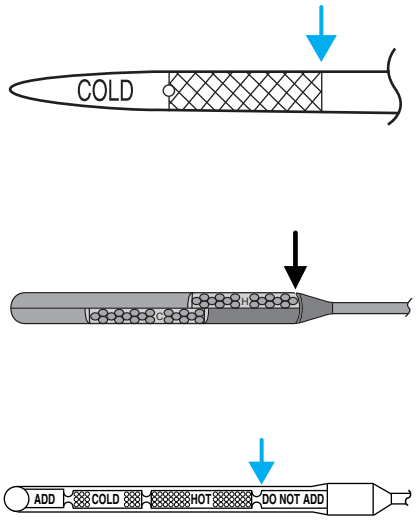


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING



The transmission fluid should be in this range if at ambient temperature (50°F-95°F [10°C-35°C]).

High fluid level



Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure.

An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

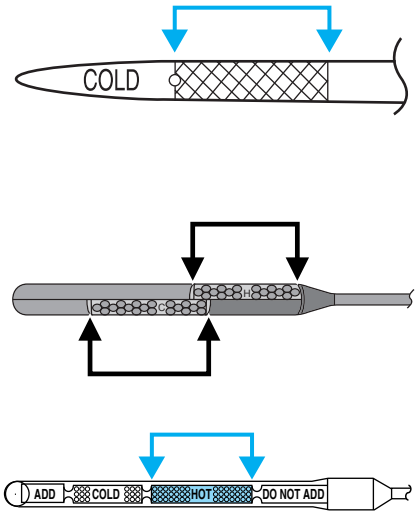
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.



If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.

An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

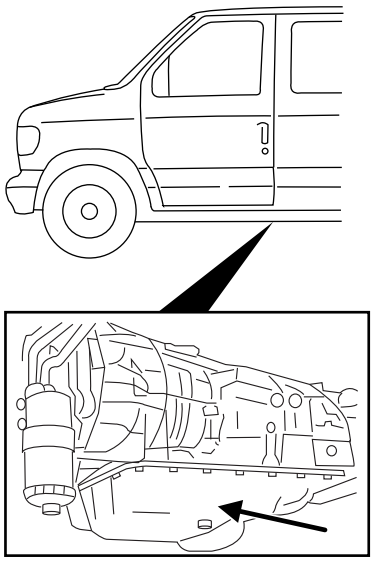
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Automatic transmission fluid filter

The TorqShift® automatic transmission is equipped with a serviceable transmission fluid filter located inside the transmission bottom pan.

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service intervals for automatic transmission fluid and transmission filter.

For transmission filter maintenance, see your authorized dealer.



AIR FILTER

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

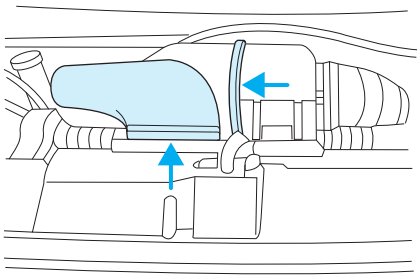
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® part numbers* in this chapter.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

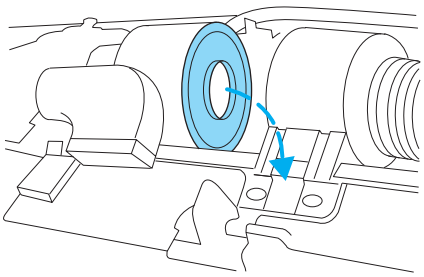
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Changing the air filter element

1. Disconnect the fresh air inlet tube from the radiator support.
2. Open the clamp that secures the two halves of the air filter housing together.



3. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
4. Remove the air filter element from the housing.



5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
6. Replace the two halves of the air filter housing and secure the clamp.
7. Connect the fresh air inlet tube to the radiator support.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), refer to the following maintenance recommendations to ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when the vehicle is washed. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminates that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Note: During extended periods of vehicle storage (30 days or more), fuel may deteriorate due to oxidation. Add a quality gas stabilizer product to the vehicle fuel system whenever actual or expected storage periods exceed 30 days. Follow the instructions on the additive label. The vehicle should then be operated at idle speed to circulate the additive throughout the fuel system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

Note: If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

Brakes

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	4.6L V8 engine	5.4L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Air filter element	FA-1632	FA-1632	FA-1632
Battery-standard / (auxiliary)	BXT-65-650 / (BXT-65-750)	BXT-65-650 / (BXT-65-750)	BXT-65-650 / (BXT-65-750)
Oil filter	FL-820-S	FL-820-S	FL-820-S
Spark plugs	[1]		
TorqShift® automatic transmission internal bottom–pan filter	—	FT-180	FT-180
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2001-PF		

[1]For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Brake fluid	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Door weatherstrips	—	Silicone Spray Lubricant	XL-6 / ESR-M13P4-A
Hinges, latches, Striker plates, fuel filler door hinge, and seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease (Lithium grease)	XG-4 or XL-5 or equivalent / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Engine coolant (4.6L engine)	23.8 quarts (22.6L)	Motorcraft® Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)[1]	VC-7-B (US) CVC-7-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine coolant (4.6L engine with aux rear heat)	26.0 quarts (24.6L)		
Engine coolant (5.4L engine)	28.8 quarts (27.2L)		
Engine coolant (5.4L engine with aux rear heat)	30.8 quarts (29.1L)		
Engine coolant (6.8L engine)	30.4 quarts (28.8L)		
Engine coolant (6.8L engine with aux rear heat)	32.6 quarts (30.8L)		

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine oil	6.0 quarts (5.7L)	• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada) • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada) [2]	• XO-5W20-QSP (US) • XO-5W20-QFS (US) • CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada) • CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C945-A with API Certification Mark
Power steering fluid	Between MIN/MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® MERCON® V ATF	XT-5-QM / MERCON® V
Automatic transmission fluid (4R75E)	13.9 quarts (13.1L)[3]	Motorcraft® MERCON® LV ATF[4]	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV
Automatic transmission fluid TorqShift® (5–speed)	18.8 quarts (17.7L)[3]	Motorcraft® MERCON® LV ATF[4]	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV
Limited Slip axle fluid M60 (M248) E-350 with 4.10 axle ratio	5.9 pints (2.8L)[5,7]	SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant[6]	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid M60 (M248) E–250/E–350	5.9 pints (2.8L)[5,7]	SAE 90 Hypoid Gear Oil	XY–90–GL / ESW-M2C105-E
Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid M70FF (M267FF) E-350	6.6 pints (3.1L)[7]		
Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid M70HD (M273HD) E-450	9.0 pints (4.3L)[7]		
Dana conventional axle fluid M60 (M248) E-350 with 4.10 axle ratio	6.2 pints (2.9L)[7]	SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant[6]	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Dana conventional axle fluid M60 (M248) E-150/E-350	6.2 pints (2.9 L)[7]	SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Dana conventional axle fluid M70FF (M267FF) E-350	6.6 pints (3.1L)[7]		
Dana conventional axle fluid M70HD (M273HD) E-450	9.0 pints (4.3 L)[7]		
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (US) Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	ZC-32-A (US) CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSB-M8B16-A2/- -

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Item	Capacity	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number / Ford specification
Fuel tank–all regular and extended length vans and wagons	33.0 gallons (124.9 L)		
Fuel tank–138 inch wheelbase (except E-Super Duty)	40.0 gallons (151.0L)		
Fuel tank–158 inch wheelbase (except E-Super Duty)	40.0 gallons (151.0L)[8]	—	—
Fuel tank–176 inch wheelbase (except E-Super Duty)	40.0 gallons (151.0L)[8]		
Fuel tank–158 inch and 176 inch wheelbase (E-Super Duty)	55.0 gallons (208.0L)		

[1]Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.
[2]Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C945-A and the API Certification mark.
[3]Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size, if equipped with an in-tank cooler, if equipped with an oil to air cooler and if equipped with a remote filter assembly. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.
[4]Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV should only use MERCON® LV fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.
[5] Dana limited-slip axle (M60) requires 6 oz. (177 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford specification EST-M2C118-A.
[6]If your vehicle's rear axle is filled with a synthetic rear axle lubricant it is considered lubricated for life. These lubricants do not need to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the axle assembly has been submerged in water. The axle lubricant should be changed any time the rear axle has been submerged in water.
[7]Fill Dana rear axles to 1/4 inch to 9/16 inch (6 mm to 14 mm) below bottom of fill hole.
[8]Optional fuel tank 55.0 gallons (208.0L).

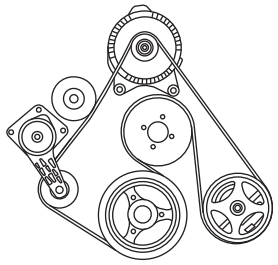
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

ENGINE DATA

Engine	4.6L V8 engine	5.4L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Cubic inches	281	330	415
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane or E85[1]	Minimum 87 octane or E85[1]	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.041–0.047 inch (1.04–1.20 mm)	0.051–0.057 inch (1.29–1.45 mm)	0.052–0.056 inch (1.32–1.42 mm)
Compression ratio	9.38:1	9.0:1	9.0:1

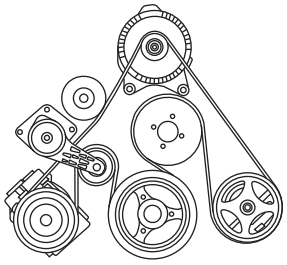
[1]4.6L V8 and 5.4L V8 FFV engines only.

Engine drivebelt routing



- 4.6L V8, 5.4L V8 and 6.8L V10 engines without A/C

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

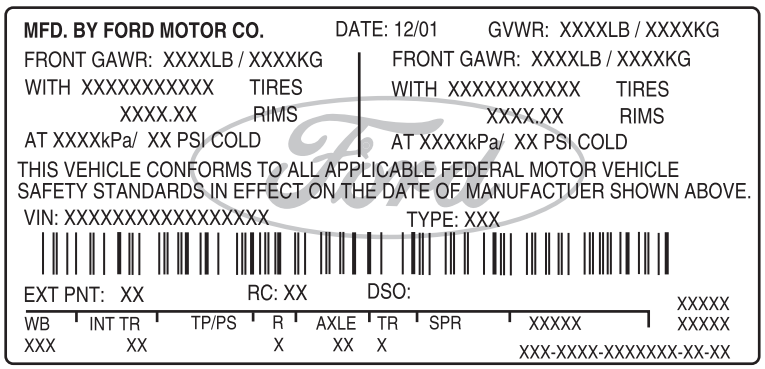


- 4.6L V8, 5.4L V8 and 6.8L V10 engines with A/C

IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

Safety Compliance Certification Label (complete Ford built vehicles)

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure (B-Pillar) by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

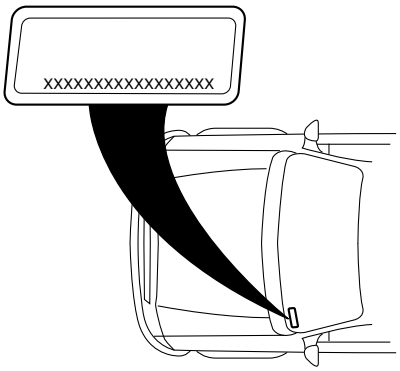


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

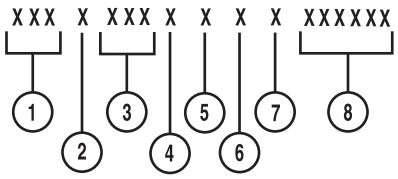
Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel or on the certification label.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



The vehicle identification number (VIN) contains the following information:



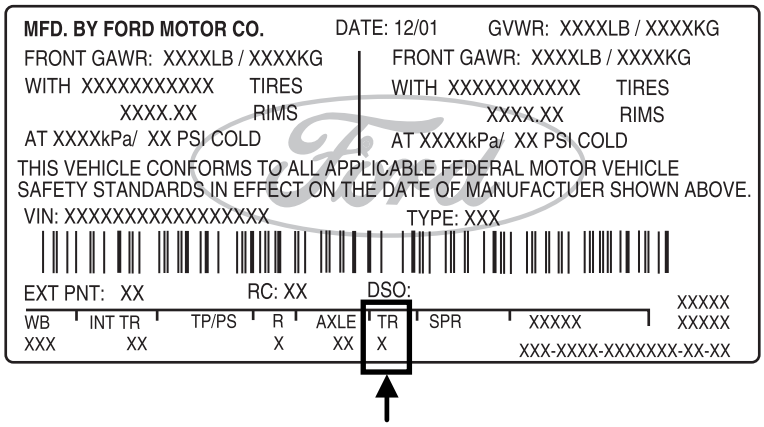
1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number

Certification label for incomplete vehicles

On completed derivations of incomplete vehicles, the certification label is affixed at a location determined by a subsequent stage manufacturer of the completed vehicle. In these cases the completed vehicle is manufactured in two or more stages by two or more separate manufacturers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS



You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.

Description	Code
Five-speed automatic (5R110W)	T
Four-speed automatic (4R75E)	Q

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Accessories

FORD CUSTOM ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Ford Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

The following is a list of several Ford Custom Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: **www.fordaccessories.com** (U.S. only).

Exterior style

- Bug shields
- Deflectors
- Running boards
- Splash guards

Interior style

- Floor mats
- Cargo organization
- Electrochromic compass/temperature interior mirrors

Lifestyle

- Racks and carriers*
- Garmin navigation*
- Trailer hitches and towing accessories

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Peace of mind

- Keyless entry keypad
- Remote start
- Vehicle security systems
- Bumper mounted parking sensors*
- Back up alarm*
- Hitch mounted parking sensor*

*Ford Licensed Accessories (FLA) are warranted by the accessory manufacturer's warranty. Ford Licensed Accessories are fully designed and developed by the accessory manufacturer and have not been designed or tested to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact your Ford dealer for details regarding the manufacturer's limited warranty and/or a copy of the FLA product limited warranty offered by the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner, may adversely affect battery performance and durability, and may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Ford Extended Service Plan

FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (U.S. ONLY)

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides "peace of mind" protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

PremiumCare – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered!

ExtraCare – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

BaseCare – Covers 84 components.

PowertrainCare – Covers 29 critical components.

Ford ESP is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada It's the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Ford Authorized Parts used with every covered repair.**

Rental car reimbursement

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer's recalls.

Transferable coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you're ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance,** including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal "wear"**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

Interest free finance options available

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Get Genuine Peace of Mind with Ford ESP!

To learn more, complete the information below and mail this to:

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 8072
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933

NAME (PLEASE PRINT) _____

ADDRESS _____ APT.NO. _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

E-MAIL: _____

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP). Ford ESP is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford ESP provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

Note: Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford ESP coverage. This information is subject to change.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Scheduled Maintenance

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why maintain your vehicle?

This guide describes the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications as identified in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance specific in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

Your dealer has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete warranty information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Chemicals or additives not approved by Ford are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

Oils, fluids and flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating and/or foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership. Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system, or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Genuine Ford parts and service

When planning your maintenance services, consider your dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

There are a lot of reasons why visiting your dealership for all your service needs is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient. How's that for quality service?

Factory-trained technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® replacement parts

Dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft® branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Scheduled Maintenance

Value shopping for your vehicle's maintenance needs

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your dealers can offer.

Owner checks and services

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in this owner's guide.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or fluids used.

Engine oil/coolant change intervals	
Engine oil	6 months or 7,500 miles (12,000 km) (whichever comes first)
Engine coolant, initial change	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first)
Engine coolant, after initial change	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)

Check every month
Engine oil level
Function of all interior and exterior lights
Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Windshield washer fluid level

Check every six months
Battery connections; clean if necessary
Body and door drain holes for obstructions; clean if necessary
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength
Door weatherstrips for wear; lubricate if necessary
Hinges/latches/outside locks for proper operation; lubricate if necessary
Parking brake for proper operation
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation
Washer spray/wiper operation; clean or replace blades as necessary

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Multi-point inspection

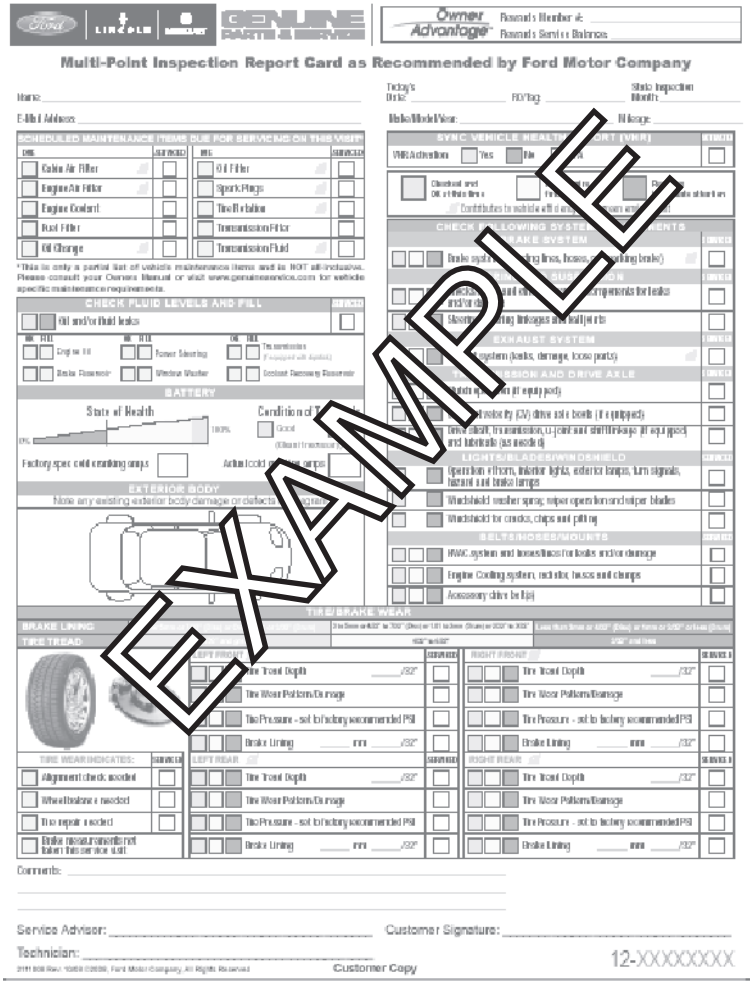
In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. Ford Motor Company recommends the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help ensure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-point inspection – Recommended each visit	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Half-shaft dust boots (if equipped)
Battery performance	Horn operation
Clutch operation (if equipped)	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Engine air filter	Suspension component for leaks or damage
Exhaust system	Steering and linkage
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
For oil and fluid leaks	Washer spray and wiper operation
*Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, manual and automatic transmission (with an underhood dipstick), power steering (if equipped) and window washer	

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It's a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It's your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You'll know what's been checked, what's okay, as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great!

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Scheduled Maintenance



Multi-Point Inspection Report Card as Recommended by Ford Motor Company

EXAMPLE

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule”. This schedule is presented at specific mileage (kilometer) intervals with exceptions noted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Miles (x 1,000)*	7.5	15	22.5	30	37.5	45	52.5	60	67.5	75
Kilometers (x 1,000)*	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Months*	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires**, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect engine cooling system concentration and hoses		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings		•		•		•		•		•
Torque rear U-bolts (Transit Connect)		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)	•		•		•		•		•	
* Whichever comes first										
**If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted										

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Miles (x 1,000)*	82.5	90	97.5	105	112.5	120	127.5	135	142.5	150
Kilometers (x 1,000)*	132	144	156	168	180	192	204	216	228	240
Months*	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires**, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect engine cooling system concentration and hoses		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings		•		•		•		•		•
Torque rear U-bolts (Transit Connect)		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)	•		•		•		•		•	

* Whichever comes first

**If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km)	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace climate-controlled seat filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 37,500 miles (60,000 km)	Inspect valve clearances; adjust as necessary (Transit Connect CNG vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on 5–speed TorqShift® transmission; consult dealer for requirements
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seal if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 97,500 miles (156,000 km)	Replace spark plugs
Every 105,000 miles (168,000 km)	Change engine coolant[1]
	Change manual transmission fluid (except Escape)
	Change rear axle fluid (Dana axles)
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s)[2]
Every 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (except 5–speed TorqShift® transmission) (filter not required on 6F35, 6F50, DPS6 and AWF-21 transmissions); consult dealer for requirements
	Change front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Change manual transmission fluid (Escape)
	Change rear axle fluid (RWD vehicles)
	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)
	Replace front wheel bearings and seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
[1]Initial replacement at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 72 months; every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 36 months thereafter	
[2]Perform a follow-up inspection at 120,000 miles (192,000 km)	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Maintenance schedule log

Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Scheduled Maintenance

Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in one of the more demanding conditions listed below, you will need to have some items maintained more frequently. If you only **occasionally** operate your vehicle under these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
	See axle maintenance items under *Exceptions*
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires*, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid
	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Extensive idling and/or low-speed driving for long distances as in heavy commercial use (i.e. delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect brake system
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Lubricate control arm and steering ball joints if equipped with grease fittings
	Rotate tires*, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 engine hours	Change engine oil and filter
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace spark plugs
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires*, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 engine hours	Change engine oil and filter
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid
	Change rear axle fluid (E-450 and F-450/550 only)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Off-road operation	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings
	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires*, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid
	Change rear axle fluid (E-450 and F-450/550 only)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

Exclusive use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles only)	
Every oil change interval	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Special operating condition log

Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:
Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:	Dealer Validation: P&A Code: RO#: Hours: Date: Mileage:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

EXCEPTIONS

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

Normal vehicle axle maintenance: Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures above 70°F (21°C) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), non-synthetic rear axle fluids should be changed every 3,000 miles (4,800 km) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number F1TZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles (refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for details).

Police/Taxi/Livery vehicle axle maintenance: Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 miles (160,000 km). Rear axle fluid change may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle fluid should be changed anytime the axle has been submerged in water

California fuel filter replacement: If the vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Class A Motorhome: Change brake fluid every two years.

Hot climate oil change intervals: If operating conditions are normal and you drive your vehicle under typical, everyday conditions **and** you are using an API performance category oil of SL or later (for example SM, etc.) then you can follow the 7,500 mile (12,000 km) normal service oil change intervals schedule. Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates must follow the oil change interval of 3,000 mile (4,800 km) if the owner is

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

using oils defined by the American Petroleum Institute (API) performance category of API SK or earlier (for example SJ, etc).

Edge/MKX AWD only – vehicles operating off-road in sand during high ambient temperatures must replace the AWD PTU (All-wheel drive Power Transfer Unit) lube every 20,000 miles (32,000 km).

Engine air filter & cabin air filter replacement: Engine air filter and cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions will require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD

Initial change	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)

Engine coolant change log

DEALER VALIDATION: P&A CODE: RO#: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION: P&A CODE: RO#: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION: P&A CODE: RO#: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION: P&A CODE: RO#: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION: P&A CODE: RO#: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION: P&A CODE: RO#: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Index

A

Accessory delay 67
AdvanceTrac 192
Airbag supplemental restraint system 106
  and child safety seats 108
  description 106
  disposal 110
  driver airbag 108
  indicator light 110
  operation 108
  passenger airbag 108
  passenger deactivation switch 111
Air cleaner filter 291–292, 295
Ambulance packages 7
Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) 266
Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) 190
Anti-theft system 85
  arming the system 86
Audio system (see Radio) ...29, 31
Automatic transmission
  driving an automatic overdrive 202, 204
  fluid, adding 286
  fluid, checking 286
  fluid, refill capacities 296
  fluid, specification 296
Auxiliary Input Jack 38
Auxiliary power point 65
Axle
  lubricant specifications 296
  refill capacities 296
  traction lok 198

B

Battery 263
  acid, treating emergencies 263
  jumping a disabled battery 235
  maintenance-free 263
  replacement, specifications ...295
  servicing 263
Belt-Minder® 102
Blind spot mirror 212
Booster seats 134
Brakes 189
  anti-lock 190
  anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light 190
  fluid, checking and adding 285
  fluid, refill capacities 296
  fluid, specifications 296
  lubricant specifications 296
  parking 191
  shift interlock 200
  trailer 178
Bulbs 57

C

Capacities for refilling fluids 296
Cell phone use 10
Changing a tire 225
Child safety seats 120
  in front seat 121
  in rear seat 121
  LATCH 124
  recommendations 118
  tether anchorage hardware ...131
Child safety seats - booster seats 134
Cleaning your vehicle
  engine compartment 252
  exterior 255
  instrument panel 253
  interior 254

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

plastic parts 252
safety belts 254
washing 250
waxing 251
wheels 251
wiper blades 253

Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) 48–50

Clock 30, 32

Compass, electronic 27
calibration 27
set zone adjustment 27

Controls
power seat 91
steering column 71

Coolant
checking and adding 266
refill capacities 270, 296
specifications 296

Cruise control (see Speed control) 70

Customer Assistance 214
Ford Extended Service Plan 306, 309
Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada 246
Getting roadside assistance 214
Getting the service you need 241
Ordering additional owner's literature 248
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program 246

D

Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) 52

Dipstick
automatic transmission fluid 286
engine oil 260

Driveline universal joint and slip yoke 286

Driving under special conditions
through water 213

E

Electronic message center 21

Emergencies, roadside
jump-starting 235

Emergency Flashers 215

Emission control system 282

Engine 300
cleaning 252
coolant 266
fail-safe cooling 271
idle speed control 263
lubrication specifications 296
refill capacities 296
service points 259
starting after a collision 216

Engine block heater 188

Engine oil 260
checking and adding 260
dipstick 260
filter, specifications 262, 295
recommendations 262
refill capacities 296
specifications 296

Event data recording 8

Exhaust fumes 187

F

Fail safe cooling 271

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Flexible Fuel Vehicle (FFV) 273
Floor mats 73, 75
Fluid capacities 296
Four-Wheel Drive vehicles
preparing to drive your vehicle 198
Fuel 273
calculating fuel economy 23, 279
cap 276
capacity 296
choosing the right fuel 277
detergent in fuel 277
filling your vehicle with fuel 273, 276, 279
filter, specifications 272, 295
fuel pump shut-off switch 216
improving fuel economy 279
octane rating 277, 300
quality 278
running out of fuel 278
safety information relating to automotive fuels 273
Fuel - flex fuel vehicle (FFV) 273, 277
Fuses 217–218

G

Gas cap (see Fuel cap) 276
Gas mileage (see Fuel economy) 279
Gauges 19

H

Hazard flashers 215
Headlamps 51
aiming 54
bulb specifications 57
daytime running lights 52
flash to pass 51
high beam 51
replacing bulbs 59
turning on and off 51
Head restraints 89
Heating
heater only system 48, 50
heating and air conditioning system 49
Hood 258

I

Ignition 184, 300
Illuminated visor mirror 65
Infant seats (see Safety seats) 120
Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing 284
Instrument panel
cleaning 253
cluster 14
lighting up panel and interior 52

J

Jack 225
positioning 225
storage 225
Jump-starting your vehicle 235

K

Keyless entry system
autolock 75

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

Keys 86
positions of the ignition 184

L

Lamps
bulb replacement specifications chart 57
daytime running light 52
headlamps 51
headlamps, flash to pass 51
instrument panel, dimming 52
interior lamps 56
replacing bulbs 59
LATCH anchors 124
Lights, warning and indicator 14
anti-lock brakes (ABS) 190
Loading instructions 172
Load limits 165
Locks
autolock 75
doors 75
Lubricant specifications 296
Lug nuts 234
Lumbar support, seats 91

M

Message center 21
english/metric button 27
warning messages 27
Mirrors 67–68
automatic dimming rearview mirror 67
fold away 69
side view mirrors (power) 68
Motorcraft® parts 256, 295

N

Navigation system 47

O

Octane rating 277
Oil (see Engine oil) 260

P

Parking brake 191
Parts
(see Motorcraft® parts) 295
Power distribution box
(see Fuses) 221
Power door locks 75
Power mirrors 68
Power point 65
Power steering 197
fluid, checking and adding 284
fluid, refill capacity 296
fluid, specifications 296
Power Windows 66
Preparing to drive your vehicle 198

R

Radio 29, 31
Rear-view camera system 210
Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children 118
Relays 217
Remote entry system 80
illuminated entry 84
locking/unlocking doors 75, 81–82
panic alarm 82
replacement/additional transmitters 83

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

replacing the batteries 82
Reverse sensing system 208
Roadside assistance 214
Roll stability control 192

S

Safety belts (see Safety restraints) 97–99, 101
Safety defects, reporting 249
Safety restraints 97–99, 101
  Belt-Minder® 102
  extension assembly 105
  for adults 98–99
  for children 116
  warning light and chime 102
Safety restraints - LATCH anchors 124
Safety seats for children 120
Safety Compliance Certification Label 301
Satellite Radio Information 44
Scheduled Maintenance Guide
  Normal Scheduled Maintenance and Log 315
Seats 89
  child safety seats 120
  front seats 90
SecuriLock passive anti-theft system 85
Servicing your vehicle 257
Setting the clock 30, 32
SOS Post Crash Alert 110
Spare tire (see Changing the Tire) 228
Spark plugs, specifications 295, 300
Special notice 7
  ambulance conversions 7
  utility-type vehicles 6
Specification chart, lubricants 296
Speed control 70
Stability system 192
Starting a flex fuel vehicle 187
Starting your vehicle 184–187
  jump starting 235
Steering wheel
  controls 71
  tilting 65
SYNC® 47

T

Temperature control (see Climate control) 48, 50
Tilt steering wheel 65
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
  Tires, Wheels and Loading 158
Tires 140–141, 225
  alignment 150
  care 146
  changing 225, 228–230
  checking the pressure 145
  inflating 142
  label 157
  replacing 148, 230
  rotating 150
  safety practices 149
  sidewall information 152
  snow tires and chains 164
  spare tire 226, 228

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING

terminology 141
tire grades 141
treadwear 140, 147
Towing 173
recreational towing 183
Trailer Brake Controller-Integrated 178
trailer towing 173
wrecker 239
Traction control 191
Traction-lok rear axle 198
Trailer Brake Controller-Integrated 178
Transmission 202
brake-shift interlock (BSI) 200
fluid, checking and adding (automatic) 286
fluid, refill capacities 296
lubricant specifications 296
Turn signal 55

U

Upfitter controls 72
USB port 40

V

Vehicle loading 165
Ventilating your vehicle 187

W

Warning lights (see Lights) 14
Washer fluid 259
Water, Driving through 213
Windows
power 66
Windshield washer fluid and wipers 64
checking and adding fluid 259
replacing wiper blades 260
Wrecker towing 239

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS
PGI DEALER DIGITAL MARKETING